Course Companion

HSK 5

Every topic handout in one volume

全部专题讲义合集

exercises.lol

Contents 目录

1. Adjectives 3

2. Adverbs 16

3. Auxiliary words 109

4. Conjunctions 113

5. Nouns 126

6. Particles 140

7. Prepositional phrases 149

8. Prepositions 153

9. Sentence patterns — focus existence 173

10. Verbs comparisons 181

11. Auxiliary verbs 193

12. Verb phrases 197

13. "But" statements 202

14. "Even if" statements 206

15. "If" statements 213

16. Adverbs with adjectives 220

17. Cause effect statements 223

18. Complements 227

19. Conditional statements 241

20. Sentence patterns — advanced 245

21. Complex sentence patterns 273

22. Either... or... 278

23. Let alone... 282

24. Comparing similar adverbs 287

25. Comparing similar adverbs II 291

26. Comparing similar prepositions: 跟 vs 对 294

27. Comparing similar prepositions 298

28. Comparing similar time words 307

29. Comparing similar verbs 313

30. Say it aloud: discussions, explanations and presentations 318

Adjectives

HSK 5

Adjectives that say how much and how. 得不得了 and 得很 come after an adjective and make it strong; adjective + 了 + (一) 点儿 says something is a bit too much (大了一点儿, too big); 有的是 + noun says there is plenty of something. 具体 asks for specific details (具体来说), 个别 sets a few cases apart, and 迅速 describes rapid action in writing.

At a glance

- **1.** Adj + 得不得了 – extremely: 队员们激动得不得了。
- **2.** Adj + 得很 – very: 这里的空气新鲜得很。
- **3.** Adj + 了 + (一) 点儿 – a bit too: 这汤咸了点儿。
- **4.** 有的是 + Noun – have plenty of: 书架上有的是小说，你随便借。
- **5.** 具体 vs 详细 – specific, in detail: 请你具体说说你的计划。
- **6.** 个别 vs 少数 and 一些 – a few individual: 除了个别同学，大家都按时到了。
- **7.** 迅速 vs 快速 and 立刻 – rapidly: 消防员迅速赶到了现场。

1. Adj + 得不得了 (extremely)

Form: adjective / feeling verb + 得不得了

- **队员们激动得不得了。** *Duìyuánmen jīdòng de bùdéliǎo.* – The players were beside themselves with excitement.
- **今天热得不得了，我一点儿也不想出门。** – It's unbearably hot today; I don't want to go out at all.
- **听说你要来，孩子们高兴得不得了。** – When they heard you were coming, the children were overjoyed.

How it works. 得 links the adjective to 不得了 *bùdéliǎo* ("beyond what can be borne"), which ends the clause and pushes the feeling to an extreme, good or bad.

Expression	Meaning
累得不得了	exhausted
不得了了!	Oh no, this is serious!
了不得	remarkable: 他真了不得

Watch out

- One degree word only: *wrong:* 很忙得不得了 → 忙得不得了.
- Keep 得: *wrong:* 累不得了 → 累得不得了.

Adjective + 得不得了: extremely



2. Adj + 得很 (very)

Form: adjective / feeling verb + 得很

- **这里的空气新鲜得很。** *Zhèlǐ de kōngqì xīnxiān de hěn.* – The air here is really fresh.
- **他的中文好得很，你不用担心。** – His Chinese is really good; don't worry.
- **这家酒店便宜得很。** – This hotel is really cheap.
- **好得很，又迟到了！** – Great, late again! (ironic)

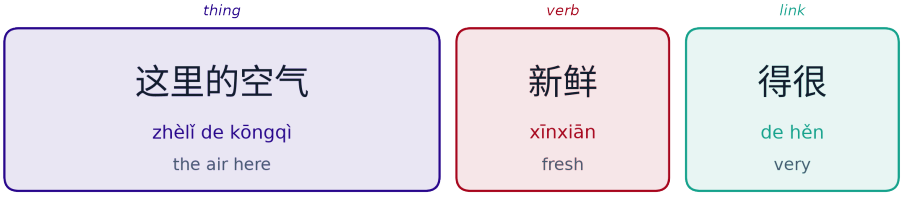
How it works. 得很 after an adjective means "very, really", livelier and more emphatic than 很 in front. It ends the clause and also follows feeling verbs: 他喜欢得很. Said flatly, it can be ironic.

很新鲜	新鲜得很	新鲜得不得了
neutral	emphatic	strongest

Watch out

- *wrong:* 很新鲜得很 → 新鲜得很; *wrong:* 好很 → 好得很.

Adjective + 得很: very (spoken)



3. Adj + 了 + (一) 点儿 (a bit too)

Form: adjective + 了 + (一) 点儿 (a bit too …)

- **这汤咸了点儿。** *Zhè tāng xiánle diǎnr.* – This soup is a bit too salty.
- **这条裤子长了点儿。** – These trousers are a bit too long.
- **八点开会，对我来说早了一点儿。** – A meeting at eight is a little early for me.
- **价格贵了点儿，能便宜一点儿吗?** – It's a bit expensive; could you make it a little cheaper?

How it works. Adjective + 了 + 点儿 measures against the right amount: slightly past it. It is a mild, polite complaint.

大了点儿	大一点儿	有点儿大	太大了!
a bit too big	a bit bigger (request)	a bit big (the feeling)	far too big

Watch out

- To ask for a bigger size, say 大一点儿的; 大了点儿 says this one is too big.



4. 有的是 + Noun (have plenty of)

Form: (topic,) subject + 有的是 + noun

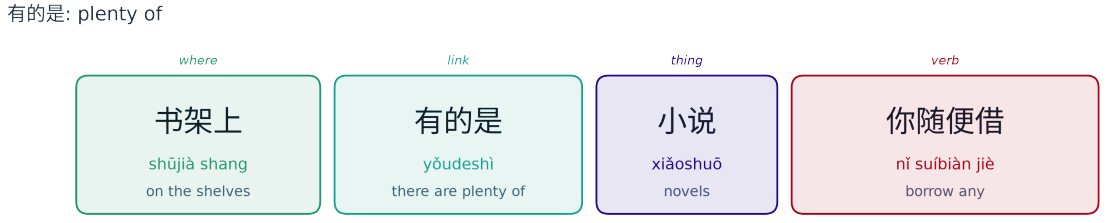
- **书架上有的是小说，你随便借。** *Shūjià shang yǒudeshì xiǎoshuō, nǐ suíbiàn jiè.* – There are plenty of novels on the shelf; borrow whatever you like.
- **别担心，票有的是。** – Don't worry, there are plenty of tickets.
- **这种东西，超市里有的是。** – Things like this, the supermarket has loads of.
- **他有的是办法。** – He has plenty of ways to handle it.

How it works. 有的是 *yǒudeshì* means "there's no shortage of". It reassures, and adds "so don't worry": 有很多时间 is neutral; 有的是时间 means there's no need to hurry. The topic can come first and 有的是 last.

有的是 + noun	有的 + noun
plenty of	some
有的是时间	有的人不喜欢吃辣

Watch out

- No 很多 inside: *wrong:* 有的是很多钱 → 有的是钱.



5. 具体 vs 详细 (specific, in detail)

Form: 具体 + verb · 具体的 + noun · 具体来说，…

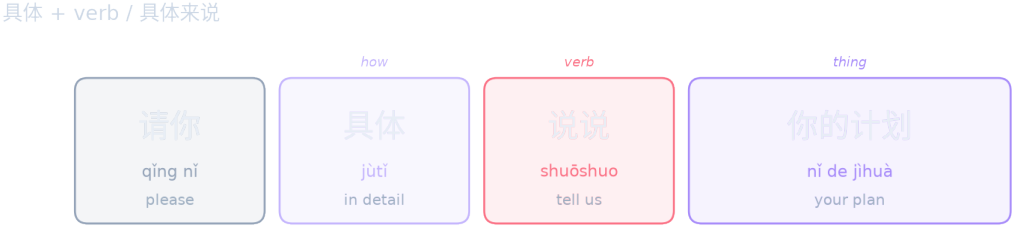
- **请你具体说说你的计划。** *Qǐng nǐ jùtǐ shuōshuo nǐ de jìhuà.* – Please tell us about your plan in detail.
- **会议的具体时间还没定。** – The exact time of the meeting hasn't been set yet.
- **具体来说，参加的人比去年多了一倍。** – To be specific, twice as many people took part as last year.

How it works. 具体 = specific, concrete, not vague. 具体来说 brings details after a general point. 详细 = full of details; 清楚 = clear. Opposite: 抽象.

具体时间	详细说明	具体来说
exact time	full instructions	to be specific

Watch out

- 具体 = exact, not vague; 详细 = with many details.



6. 个别 vs 少数 and 一些 (a few individual)

Form: 个别 + noun · 个别 + verb (individually)

- **除了个别同学，大家都按时到了。** *Chúle gèbié tóngxué, dàjiā dōu ànshí dào le.* – Apart from a few students, everyone arrived on time.
- **这只是个别现象。** – This is just an isolated case.
- **老师会个别辅导成绩不好的学生。** – The teacher will give individual help to students with low marks.

How it works. 个别 = a very few individual, isolated cases, set apart from the rest; before a verb, individually. 少数 = a minority; 一些 = some. Opposite: 普遍.

个别同学	少数人	普遍
a few students	a minority	widespread

Watch out

- 个别 stresses isolated cases; 少数 a minority.



7. 迅速 vs 快速 and 立刻 (rapidly)

Form: 迅速 + verb · verb + 得 + 很迅速

- **消防员迅速赶到了现场。** *Xiāofángyuán xùnsù gǎn dào le xiànchǎng.* – Firefighters rushed to the scene.
- **这座城市发展得非常迅速。** – This city has developed very rapidly.
- **请立刻停车！** – Stop the car immediately!

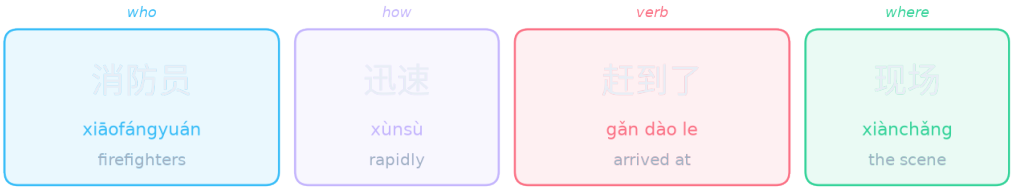
How it works. 迅速 = rapidly, a written word for fast action or change. 快速 is close (often before nouns). 立刻 / 马上 = immediately. In speech: 很快.

迅速赶到	发展迅速	立刻停车
rush there	develop fast	stop at once

Watch out

- In speech, 很快 sounds more natural than 迅速.

迅速 + verb: rapidly



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. Adj + 得不得了 (extremely)

1. Complete: "I'm terribly busy this week." 这个星期我忙 …… 不得了。

2. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他高兴得不得了。
- B. 他不得了高兴。
- C. 他高兴不得了得。
- D. 他很高兴得不得了。

3. Match each expression to its meaning.

- (1) 累得不得了
- (2) 不得了了!
- (3) 了不得
- A. remarkable
- B. exhausted
- C. oh no, this is serious!

4. Build: "When they heard you were coming, the children were overjoyed."

Put in order: 听说你要来 / 不得了。/ ， 孩子们 / 高兴得

5. Your school team has just won the city championship after a penalty shoot-out. Use Adj + 得不得了. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. Adj + 得很 (very)

6. Complete: "This hotel is really cheap." 这家酒店便宜 ……。

7. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 空气新鲜得很。
- B. 空气很新鲜得很。

- C. 空气新鲜很。
- D. 空气得很新鲜。

8. Build: “His Chinese is really good.”

Put in order: 得很。/ 好 / 他的中文

9. True or false? 得不得了 is usually stronger than 得很. If false, correct it.

10. After a week in a smoggy city, you walk in a mountain park. Use Adj + 得很. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. Adj + 了 + (一) 点儿 (a bit too)

11. Complete: “These trousers are a bit too long.” 这条裤子长 …… 点儿。

12. You want a slightly bigger size. What do you ask for?

- A. 太大了的
- B. 大了点儿的
- C. 有点儿大的
- D. 大一点儿的

13. Build: “A meeting at eight is a little early for me.”

Put in order: ，对我来说 / 早了 / 一点儿。/ 八点开会

14. True or false? 太咸了 is a stronger complaint than 咸了点儿. If false, correct it.

15. You taste the soup your roommate made. It’s good, but there’s slightly too much salt. Use Adj + 了 +. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 4. 有的是 + Noun (have plenty of)

16. Reassure: “Don’t worry, there are plenty of tickets.” 别担心，票 ……。

17. What does 有的人不喜欢吃辣 mean?

- A. Some people don’t like spicy food.
- B. Plenty of people dislike spicy food.
- C. Everyone likes spicy food.
- D. Nobody likes spicy food.

18. Build: “He has plenty of ways (to solve it).”

Put in order: 办法。/ 他 / 有的是

19. True or false? 有的是时间 suggests there’s no need to hurry. If false, correct it.

20. A friend worries she won’t find a novel to read on holiday. Use 有的是 + Noun. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 5. 具体 vs 详细 (specific, in detail)

21. Complete: "Please tell us about your plan in detail." 请你 …… 说说你的计划。

22. Which phrase introduces details after a general point?

- A. 笼统来说，……
- B. 具体来说，……

23. "The exact time of the meeting hasn't been set yet." Which fits best?

- A. 会议的详细时间还没定。
- B. 会议的具体时间还没定。

24. Build: "To be specific, twice as many people took part as last year."

Put in order: 比去年 / 参加的人 / 多了一倍。/ 具体来说，

25. True or false? The opposite of 具体 is 抽象 (abstract). If false, correct it.

26. Make a general statement about your school, then support it with 具体来说 and one specific detail. Use 具体 or 详细. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 6. 个别 vs 少数 and 一些 (a few individual)

27. Complete: "Apart from a few students, everyone arrived on time." 除了 …… 同学，大家都按时到了。

28. What is the opposite of 个别现象 (an isolated case)?

- A. 普遍现象
- B. 具体现象

29. 老师会个别辅导成绩不好的学生。What does it mean?

- A. The teacher will help those students one-to-one.
- B. The teacher will help only one student.

30. Build: "This is just an isolated case."

Put in order: 个别 / 只是 / 现象。/ 这

31. True or false? 个别 stresses individual, isolated cases, while 少数 stresses a minority. If false, correct it.

32. Report on how your class did in a test, in two sentences: most did well, but a few individual students had problems (个别), and what the teacher will do (个别辅导). Use 个别 or 少数 and 一些. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 7. 迅速 vs 快速 and 立刻 (rapidly)

33. Complete (a news report): "Firefighters rushed to the scene." 消防员 …… 赶到了现场。

34. A parent calls a child in everyday speech – "Come here right now!" Which is most natural?

- A. 迅速过来!

- B. 马上过来!

35. Chatting with a friend – which sounds most natural?

- A. 他迅速地来了。
- B. 他很快就来了。

36. Build: “This city has developed very rapidly.”

Put in order: 迅速。/ 发展得 / 非常 / 这座城市

37. True or false? 消息迅速传开了 means “The news spread rapidly.” If false, correct it.

38. Write a two-sentence news item about a problem that was solved quickly. Use 迅速 twice. Use 迅速 or 快速 and 立刻. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

39. Choose 得不得了 or 了一点儿: 这双鞋大 ……，有小一点儿的吗？/ 听到这个消息，他高兴 ……。

40. Your friend worries about time. Say “We have plenty of time.”

41. Find and fix the problem. A classmate writes 我有很多的是时间 for “I have plenty of time.” Correct it.

42. Use it yourself. Say the journey was extremely tiring, and that there are plenty of seats left.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. Adj + 得不得了 (extremely)

1. 得

Adj + 得 + 不得了.

2. A. 他高兴得不得了。

他高兴得不得了 is right: a bare adjective + 得不得了 already means "extremely", so 很 is not added.

3. (1) B: 累得不得了 = exhausted; (2) C: 不得了了！ = oh no, this is serious!; (3) A: 了不得 = remarkable

The position and order of 不得了 / 了不得 change the meaning.

4. 听说你要来，孩子们高兴得不得了。

Cause, then subject + Adj + 得不得了.

5. Model answer: 队员们激动得不得了。

Check your answer:

- No 很 / 非常 before the adjective: 忙得不得了, not 很忙得不得了.
- Keep 得: 累得不得了, not 累不得了.

■ 2. Adj + 得很 (very)

6. 得很

Adj + 得很.

7. A. 空气新鲜得很。

空气新鲜得很 is right: a bare adjective + 得很. A second 很 is redundant, and 得 must follow the adjective.

8. 他的中文好得很。

Subject + Adj + 得很.

9. True.

The scale is 很 → 得很 → 得不得了.

10. Model answer: 这里的空气新鲜得很。

Check your answer:

- Do not add 很 before as well: 新鲜得很, not 很新鲜得很.
- Keep 得: 好得很, not 好很.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 3. Adj + 了 + (一) 点儿 (a bit too)

11. 了

Adj + 了 + 点儿 = a bit too.

12. D. 大一点儿的

A request for "a bit bigger" is Adj + 一点儿.

13. 八点开会，对我来说早了一点儿。

Adj + 了 + 一点儿.

14. True.

True. 太 … 了 is a strong complaint ("far too salty"), while adjective + 了点儿 is mild and polite: 咸了点儿 "a little too salty".

15. Model answer: 这汤咸了点儿。

Check your answer:

- 大了点儿 = a bit too big (off from what's needed). 大一点儿 = a bit bigger (a comparison or request).
- It is mild; for a strong complaint use 太 … 了: 太咸了!

■ 4. 有的是 + Noun (have plenty of)

16. 有的是

Topic + 有的是 = plenty.

17. A. Some people don't like spicy food.

有的 + noun means "some (of them)": 有的人不喜欢吃辣 "Some people don't like spicy food." It says nothing about how many, so "plenty" overstates it.

18. 他有的是办法。

Subject + 有的是 + noun.

19. True.

It reassures that there is more than enough.

20. Model answer: 书架上有的是小说，你随便借。

Check your answer:

- 有的是 = plenty; 有的 + noun = some: 有的人喜欢 – "some people like it". Do not mix them up.
- No 很多 inside: 有的是钱, not 有的是很多钱.

■ 5. 具体 vs 详细 (specific, in detail)

21. 具体

Specific, in detail – 具体.

22. B. 具体来说，……

具体来说 = to be specific; 笼统来说 = speaking generally.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

23. B. 会议的具体时间还没定。

An exact time – 具体的时间.

24. 具体来说，参加的人比去年多了一倍。

具体来说 + the detail.

25. True.

具体 = concrete; 抽象 = abstract.

26. Model answer: 我们学校非常重视体育。具体来说，每个学生每天都要运动一个小时，每年还有两次运动会。

Check your answer:

- The general statement comes first.
- 具体来说 introduces a specific detail.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 6. 个别 vs 少数 and 一些 (a few individual)

27. 个别

One or two individual cases – 个别.

28. A. 普遍现象

个别 vs 普遍 (widespread).

29. A. The teacher will help those students one-to-one.

个别 + verb = individually.

30. 这只是个别现象。

个别 + noun.

31. True.

个别现象 = an isolated case; 少数人 = a minority.

32. Model answer: 这次考试大部分同学考得不错，只有个别同学没及格。老师说下周会个别辅导他们。

Check your answer:

- 个别 sets a very small number apart.
- 个别 + verb means individually.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 7. 迅速 vs 快速 and 立刻 (rapidly)

33. 迅速

Rapidly (written) – 迅速.

34. B. 马上过来!

Right now, in speech – 马上 (or 立刻). 迅速 is a written word for speed.

35. B. 他很快就来了。

In speech, 很快; 迅速 is written.

36. 这座城市发展得非常迅速。

Verb + 得 + 迅速.

37. True.

迅速 describes fast change.

38. Model answer: 昨天上午，学校的一间教室突然停电了。电工接到电话后迅速赶来，问题很快就解决了，消息也在学生中迅速传开了。

Check your answer:

- 迅速 describes fast action or change.
- The style fits a news item.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ Mixed practice

39. 这双鞋大了一点儿 (a bit too big)。他高兴得不得了 (extremely happy).

40. 我们有的是时间。有的是 + noun means there is plenty, so don't worry.

41. 有的是 is a fixed phrase and goes straight before the noun: 我有的是时间. It already means "plenty", so drop 很多.

42. Model answer. 这次旅行累得不得了。别担心，座位有的是。

Review later. Tomorrow, use 得不得了, 得很 and 了一点儿 with three different adjectives.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Adverbs

HSK 5

HSK 5 adverbs carry the speaker's attitude: 毕竟 explains with a deeper reason, 反正 dismisses details, 干脆 makes a quick decision, 简直 exaggerates, 白 says the effort was wasted. Many sound the same in English ("anyway", "simply", "after all"), so learn each with its typical situation.

At a glance

Attitude and judgement

- **1.** 毕竟 – after all: 他毕竟是新手，给他一点时间。
- **2.** 反正 – anyway / in any case: 坐什么车你决定吧，反正我八点到。
- **3.** 干脆 – just / simply / might as well: 干脆换一个吧。
- **4.** 简直 – strong evaluation and comparison: 这里的风景简直像画一样！
- **5.** Advanced 都 – already / even: 都十二点了，明天再做吧！
- **6.** Advanced 还 … 呢: 小声点，他还在睡觉呢。
- **7.** 未必 / 不见得 – not necessarily: 贵的东西未必好。
- **8.** 恨不得 – wish one could / itching to: 我恨不得马上飞回家。
- **9.** 仿佛 – as if: 爷爷高兴得仿佛年轻了十岁。
- **10.** 相当 (quite) and 相当于 – equal to: 这次考试相当难。
- **11.** 的确 vs 确实 and 真的 – indeed: 这家店的确不错。
- **12.** 更加 vs 更 – even more: 现在电脑比以前更加重要。
- **13.** 绝对 – absolutely, definitely: 放心，我绝对不会告诉别人。
- **14.** 唯一 vs 只有 – the only: 这是唯一的办法。
- **15.** 相对 vs 比较 – relatively: 这里的房子相对便宜。
- **16.** 一致 – unanimously; consistent: 大家一致认为这个办法好。
- **17.** 彻底 vs 完全 – thoroughly, completely: 对不起，我彻底忘了！
- **18.** 过分 vs 太 and 过于 – going too far: 你这样做太过分了！
- **19.** 说不定 vs 也许 and 恐怕 – maybe, who knows: 别等了，他说不定已经进去了。

Effort and manner

- **20.** 尽量 + Verb – as much as possible: 我会尽量早点来。
- **21.** 尽管 + Verb – feel free to: 有问题尽管问。
- **22.** 互相 + Verb – each other: 他们互相帮助。
- **23.** 顺便 – while you're at it / by the way: 你去图书馆的时候，顺便帮我还这本书吧。
- **24.** 好 (不) 容易 – with great difficulty: 我好不容易才买到票。
- **25.** 白 + Verb – in vain / for nothing: 办公室关门了，我白跑了一趟。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- **26.** 连忙 vs 赶紧 – hurriedly / hurry up: 他看见老人上车，连忙站起来让座。
- **27.** 特意 vs 顺便 and 故意 – specially / while you're at it / on purpose: 我特意为你做了这个菜。
- **28.** 分别 – respectively, separately: 我和妹妹分别住在北京和上海。
- **29.** 悄悄 vs 安静, 偷偷 and 轻轻 – quietly: 他悄悄地走进了教室。
- **30.** 单独 vs 独自 – alone, separately: 老师想单独跟你谈谈。

Time and repetition

- **31.** 总 – always / keep on: 他总迟到。
- **32.** 曾经 + Verb + 过 – once / formerly: 我曾经在上海住过两年。
- **33.** 再三 + Verb – over and over: 教练再三提醒我们带水。
- **34.** Verb + 了 + 又 + Verb – again and again: 这封信我看了又看。
- **35.** 再也 + 不 / 没 + … 了 – never again: 毕业以后，我们再也没见过面。
- **36.** 始终 – all along / from start to finish: 他始终没说话。
- **37.** 仍然 – still: 十年过去了，他仍然住在这里。
- **38.** 逐渐 vs 逐步 – gradually / step by step: 我逐渐习惯了这里的生活。
- **39.** 随时 – at any time: 有问题可以随时问我。
- **40.** 从此 and 至今 – from then on / to this day: 他第一次去成都就爱上了火锅，从此每个周末都要吃。
- **41.** 立刻 and 立即 vs 马上 – at once / soon: 一听到消息，他立刻赶到了医院。
- **42.** 偶然 vs 偶尔 – by chance / now and then: 我在书店偶然遇到了一位老同学。
- **43.** 事先 vs 提前 – beforehand / ahead of time: 去之前最好事先打个电话。
- **44.** 纷纷 – one after another, many: 同学们纷纷举手。
- **45.** 反复 vs 重复 – again and again / to repeat: 老师反复强调这一点。
- **46.** 从前 vs 以前 and 过去 – long ago: 从前这里是一片农田，现在成了大城市。
- **47.** 最初 vs 当初 – at first / back then: 最初我不太习惯，后来就好了。

Near misses, warnings and differences

- **48.** 差点没 – near misses and context: 我差点没赶上车，幸好司机等了我。
- **49.** 再不 … 就 … 了 – a conditional warning: 再不走，我们就迟到了!
- **50.** 差很多 – differ a lot: 这两张票的价格差很多。
- **51.** 幸亏 – luckily / thanks to: 幸亏你提醒我带伞，不然我就淋湿了。
- **52.** 难免 – bound to / hard to avoid: 第一次上台难免会紧张。

1. 毕竟 (after all)

Form: subject + 毕竟 + predicate · 毕竟 + clause

- **他毕竟是新手，给他一点时间。** *Tā bìjìng shì xīnshǒu, gěi tā yìdiǎn shíjiān.* – He's a beginner, after all; give him some time.
- **别太严格，他毕竟还是个孩子。** – Don't be too strict; he's still a child, after all.

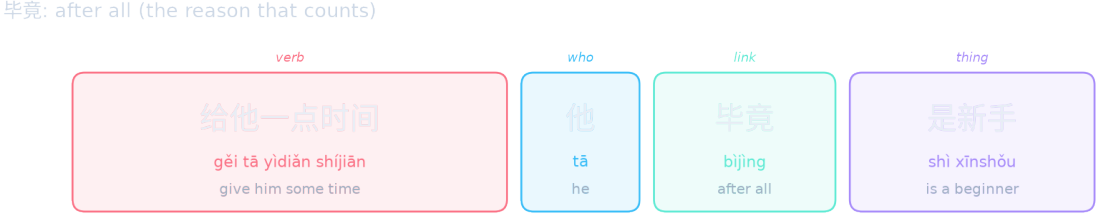
- **这毕竟是他的决定，我们应该尊重。** – It's his decision, after all; we should respect it.

How it works. 毕竟 *bìjìng* "after all" reminds the listener of a reason that supports the speaker's judgement or advice. It goes before the predicate, or at the start of the clause: 他毕竟是新手 / 毕竟他是新手. The reason need not excuse a mistake; it can support respect, patience or caution.

毕竟	反正
highlights *why* a judgement is reasonable	holds a point regardless of other options
他毕竟是新手，给他一点时间	反正今天不交，明天再检查

Watch out

- 毕竟 presents a reason as relevant; it does not prove it true. 他毕竟有经验 still needs evidence.
- Some contexts allow both 毕竟 and 反正, with different emphasis; don't translate every English "anyway" as 毕竟.



2. 反正 (anyway / in any case)

Form: 反正 + clause · subject + 反正 + predicate · 不管 …，反正 …

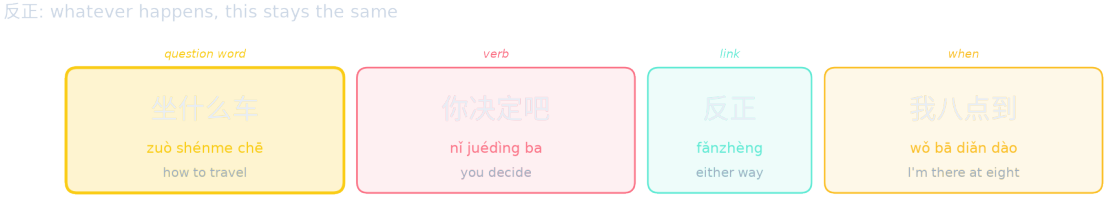
- **坐什么车你决定吧，反正我八点到。** *Zuò shénme chē nǐ juédìng ba, fǎnzhèng wǒ bā diǎn dào.* – You decide how to travel; either way, I'll arrive at eight.
- **不管你信不信，反正我信。** – Whether you believe it or not, I do.
- **反正时间还早，我们慢慢走。** – There's still time anyway; let's walk slowly.
- **反正现在还不知道，等通知吧。** – We don't know yet anyway; let's wait for the notice.

How it works. 反正 *fǎnzhèng* holds one point fixed regardless of the alternatives being discussed. First find what stays open (how to travel) and what stays fixed (arriving at eight). The point can be a decision, a practical circumstance, or even admitted uncertainty. The tone can be practical, reassuring or dismissive.

In neutral writing, it comes before the clause or the predicate: 反正我不去 / 我反正不去.

Watch out

- 反正 does not always mean a firm personal decision.
- 反正我不去 can sound dismissive in an argument; when your decision affects someone, explain it.



3. 干脆 (just / simply / might as well)

Form: subject + 干脆 + verb phrase · 干脆 + suggestion + 吧 · verb + 得 + 很干脆 (decisive)

- **修了三次还坏，干脆换一个吧。** *Xiūle sān cì hái huài, gāncuì huàn yí ge ba.* – It's broken after three repairs; let's just replace it.
- **干脆自己做吧。** – Let's just do it ourselves, then.
- **她干脆不回答了。** – She simply stopped answering.
- **她回答得很干脆。** – She answered decisively.

How it works. Before an action, 干脆 *gāncuì* proposes a direct way out, often after other attempts have failed: "just, simply, might as well". After 得, it describes a clear, decisive manner.

Keep three questions apart: is it a direct choice (干脆 says yes); is it a good choice; does the person change it later? 干脆 answers only the first. 他干脆关了手机，后来又打开了 is a normal sentence.

Watch out

- 干脆换一个吧 does not prove replacing is cheapest or best; a reader can understand it and still disagree.



4. 简直: strong evaluation and comparison

Form: 简直 + strong description · 简直 + 像 … 一样

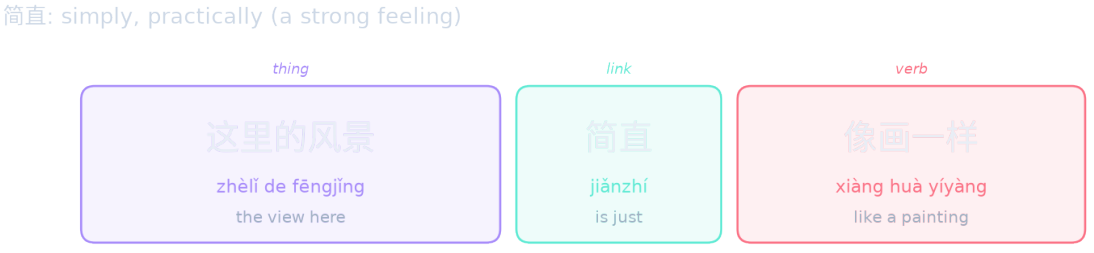
- **这里的风景简直像画一样。** *Zhèlǐ de fēngjǐng jiǎnzhí xiàng huà yíyàng.* – The scenery looks just like a painting.
- **这简直太棒了！** – This is simply amazing!
- **我简直不敢相信自己的眼睛。** – I simply can't believe my eyes.
- **这间屋子简直像冰箱一样。** – This room is like a fridge.

How it works. 简直 *jiǎnzhí* strengthens the speaker's evaluation: "simply, just". The description after it gives the direction: 简直太好了 (approval), 简直太糟了 (disapproval). With 像 …… 一样 it is a figurative comparison, not a literal claim.

简直像一幅画	这是一幅画	室温是十摄氏度
a strong comparison	identifies a painting	a measured fact

Watch out

- Don't translate 简直 as "literally": the view is not made of paint, and "like a fridge" gives no temperature.



5. Advanced 都 (already / even)

Form: 都 + time / reached state + 了 · … + 都 + 不 / 没 (even) · group + 都 (all)

- **都十二点了，明天再做吧！** *Dōu shí'èr diǎn le, míngtiān zài zuò ba!* – It's already twelve; let's continue tomorrow!
- **饭都凉了。** *Fàn dōu liáng le.* – The food has gone cold already.
- **他急得饭都吃不下。** – He's so anxious he can't even eat.
- **这么简单的题都不会做。** – Can't even do such an easy question.

How it works. One character, three readings. Read what 都 applies to.

Example	Reading
我们都来了。	all of the group
都十二点了！	a point already reached, often with surprise or impatience
连小李都来了。/ 这么简单的题都不会做。	“even”: an unexpected item in focus

已经十二点了 also says it is already twelve; 都 adds emphasis, but the exact attitude depends on context and voice. 都 often follows the topic or subject; it is not always first.

都十二点了，他还在工作呢 combines a reached point (都) with a continuing state (还 …… 呢).

Watch out

- Don’t translate every 都 as “all”: 连小李都来了 singles out Xiao Li; it doesn’t say everyone came.



6. Advanced 还 … 呢

Form: subject + 还 + predicate + 呢 (still) · 还 + role + 呢 (ironic)

- **小声点，他还在睡觉呢。** *Xiǎo shēng diǎn, tā hái zài shuìjiào ne.* – Keep your voice down; he’s still asleep.
- **时间还早呢，别着急。** – It’s still early; don’t rush.

- **还专家呢，连这个都不懂。** – An expert, supposedly, and you don't even understand this.

How it works. Two patterns look alike.

还 + predicate + 呢	还 + role + 呢
a state still continues; 呢 draws attention to it	challenges a claimed role, ironically
often a reason for a reminder or reassurance	can be sharp criticism, not friendly teasing

呢 is not a past-tense marker. Changing the ending changes the sentence: 他还在睡觉吗? asks whether he is still asleep. 还说呢 is a context-dependent spoken reply, often "don't even mention it".

Watch out

- To explain why someone should be quiet, state the situation (他还在睡觉呢), not an ironic role comment.



7. 未必 / 不见得 (not necessarily)

Form: subject + 未必 / 不见得 + verb / adjective · 未必。/ 不见得。as a reply

- **贵的东西未必好。** *Guì de dōngxi wèibì hǎo.* – Expensive things are not necessarily good.
- **他不见得知道这件事。** – He doesn't necessarily know about this.
- **– 这家饭店一定很好吃。– 不见得。** – "This restaurant must be great." "Not necessarily."

How it works. 未必 and 不见得 answer an idea someone takes for granted. They leave the question open: maybe yes, maybe no. 不见得 sounds more spoken. Both can stand alone as a reply.

他不来	他一定不来	他未必来	他未必不来
he isn't coming	he definitely won't come	he may not come	he may come after all

Watch out

- 未必 is not the same as 不: 未必好 = not necessarily good; 不好 = not good.
- 未必不 + verb means "may … after all": 他未必不知道 = he may know after all.



8. 恨不得 (wish one could / itching to)

Form: subject + 恨不得 + (马上 / 立刻) + verb phrase

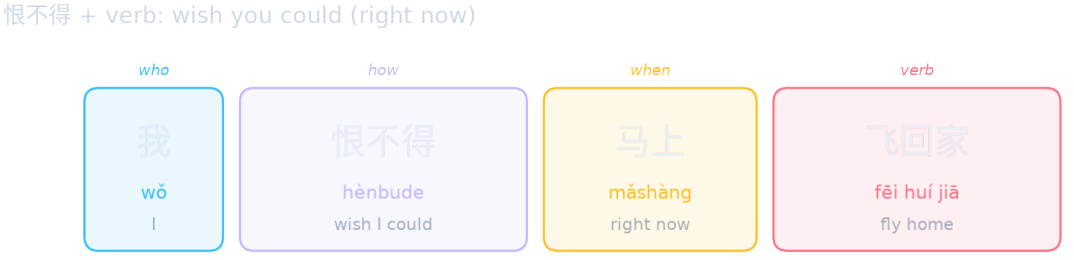
- **我恨不得马上飞回家。** *Wǒ hènbude mǎshàng fēi huí jiā.* – I wish I could fly home right now.
- **他恨不得立刻告诉所有人。** – He was itching to tell everyone at once.
- **我恨不得一天有四十八个小时。** – I wish a day had 48 hours.

How it works. 恨不得 shows a very strong wish to do something at once, often something you can't really do. 恨 here does not mean "hate". An action always follows it.

恨不得马上回家	巴不得早点儿放假	舍不得离开
wish I could go home now (strong, often impossible)	can't wait for the holidays (close, more spoken)	can't bear to leave

Watch out

- *wrong:* 我恨不得一碗面 → 我恨不得马上吃一碗面.
- Don't negate it: *wrong:* 我不恨不得; use 不想.



9. 仿佛 (as if)

Form: 仿佛 + picture (+ 一样 / 似的)

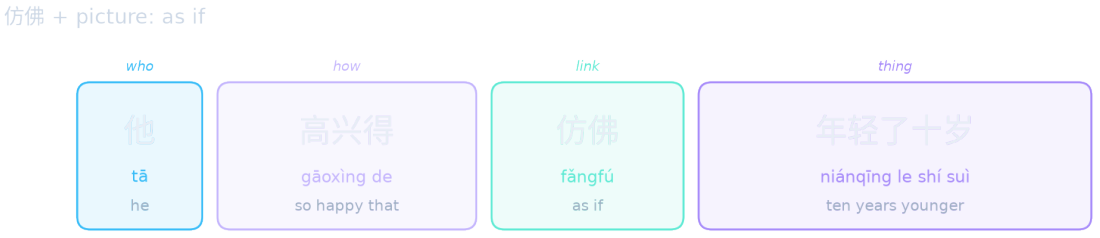
- **爷爷高兴得仿佛年轻了十岁。** *Yéye gāoxìng de fǎngfú niánqīng le shí suì.* – Grandpa was so happy he looked ten years younger.
- **这里的风景美得仿佛一幅画。** – The scenery here is as beautiful as a painting.
- **他睡得很香，仿佛什么都没发生过一样。** – He slept soundly, as if nothing had happened.

How it works. 仿佛 compares what you see or feel with a picture, often one that isn't really true. 好像 can do this too, in everyday speech. It is mainly written and descriptive. For a plain guess in speech, say 好像; in careful writing, 似乎.

仿佛一幅画	他好像不在家	似乎有点儿问题
as if it were a painting	he doesn't seem to be home	there seems to be a problem

Watch out

- 他仿佛不在家 sounds like a novel; in speech say 他好像不在家.



10. 相当 (quite) and 相当于 (equal to)

Form: 相当 + adjective · A 相当于 B

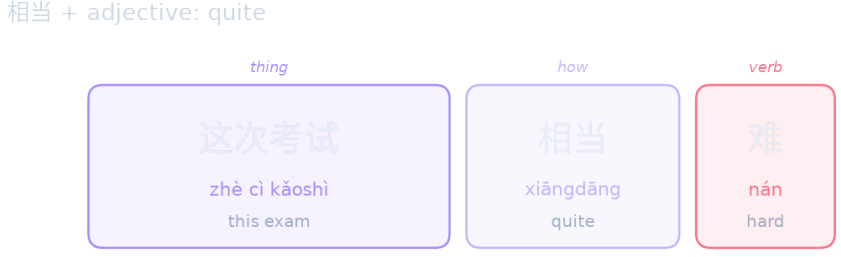
- **这次考试相当难。** *Zhè cì kǎoshì xiāngdāng nán.* – This exam was quite hard.
- **他的中文说得相当流利。** – He speaks Chinese quite fluently.
- **一公里相当于两里。** – One kilometre equals two li.

How it works. 相当 means "quite" and sits between 比较 (fairly) and 非常 (very). It is a little formal. 相当于 means "is equal to". Don't add 很 after 相当, and don't put it before the adjective in a 比 sentence.

比较辣	相当辣	非常辣
a bit hot	quite hot	very hot

Watch out

- *wrong:* 相当很好 → 相当好. *wrong:* 他比我相当高 → 他比我高得多.



11. 的确 vs 确实 and 真的 (indeed)

Form: 的确 (dí què) + verb / adjective · 的确 ……，但是 ……

- **这家店的确不错。** *Zhè jiā diàn díquè búcuò.* – This place really is good.
- **你说得对，这个问题的确很难。** – You're right – this question really is hard.

- **这个办法的确好，但是太花时间了。** – This method is indeed good, but it takes too much time.

How it works. 的确 confirms something, often what someone said. It is close to 确实 (which can also be an adjective); 真的 is the everyday word and can ask 真的吗?

的确不错	确实如此	真的吗?
really is good	that's indeed so	really?

Watch out

- Read 的 as dí. *wrong:* 的确吗? → 真的吗?



12. 更加 vs 更 (even more)

Form: (A 比 B) 更加 + two-character adjective / verb

- **现在电脑比以前更加重要。** *Xiànzài diànnǎo bǐ yǐqián gèngjiā zhòngyào.* – Computers are even more important now than before.
- **听了老师的话，他学习更加努力了。** – After the teacher's talk, he studied even harder.
- **今天比昨天更冷。** – Today is even colder than yesterday.

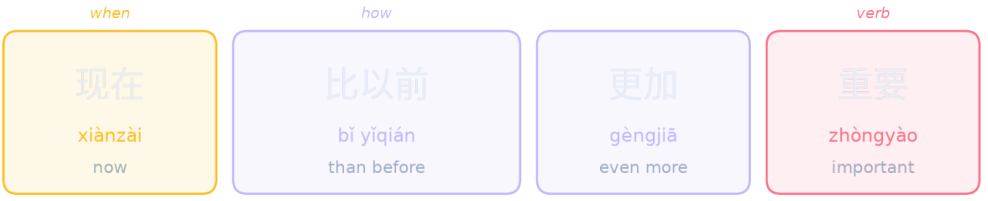
How it works. 更加 = even more, like 更 but a little more formal, usually before two-character words. 更 is everyday and fine with one-character words. 越来越 shows change over time.

更加重要	更冷	越来越冷
even more important	even colder	colder and colder

Watch out

- *wrong:* 比以前很重要 → 比以前更加重要.

比 … 更加 + adjective



13. 绝对 (absolutely, definitely)

Form: 绝对 (不) + verb / adjective · 绝对的 + noun (absolute)

- **放心，我绝对不会告诉别人。** *Fàngxīn, wǒ juéduì bú huì gàosu biérén.* – Don't worry, I absolutely won't tell anyone.
- **这家的饺子绝对好吃！** – The dumplings here are absolutely delicious!
- **没有绝对的自由。** – There is no absolute freedom.

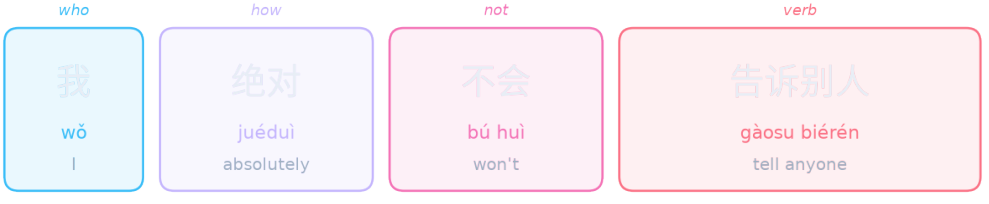
How it works. 绝对 makes a statement 100%: strong promises, opinions and refusals (绝对不行). For a guess, use 可能 / 估计; for strong advice, 一定要.

绝对没问题	一定要来	可能不来
no problem at all	you must come	might not come

Watch out

- Don't use 绝对 for a guess.

绝对 (不) + verb: absolutely



14. 唯一 vs 只有 (the only)

Form: 唯一的 + noun · (subject +) 唯一 + verb + 的是 …

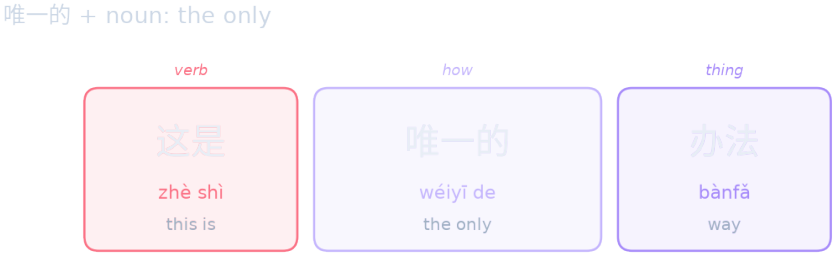
- **这是唯一的办法。** *Zhè shì wéiyī de bànfǎ.* – This is the only way.
- **我唯一担心的是天气。** – The only thing I'm worried about is the weather.
- **我只有一个哥哥。** – I have only one older brother.

How it works. 唯一 describes a noun (the only …) or starts "the only thing … is". 只有 / 只 limit a number or an action.

唯一的机会	只有一个	唯一担心的是
the only chance	only one	the only worry is

Watch out

- *wrong:* 我唯一有一个哥哥 → 我只有一个哥哥.



15. 相对 vs 比较 (relatively)

Form: 相对 + adjective · 相对来说，…

- **这里的房子相对便宜。** *Zhèlǐ de fángzi xiāngduì piányi.* – Houses here are relatively cheap.
- **这个季节游客相对少。** – There are relatively few tourists in this season.
- **相对来说，坐地铁比打车方便。** – Comparatively speaking, the metro is more convenient than a taxi.

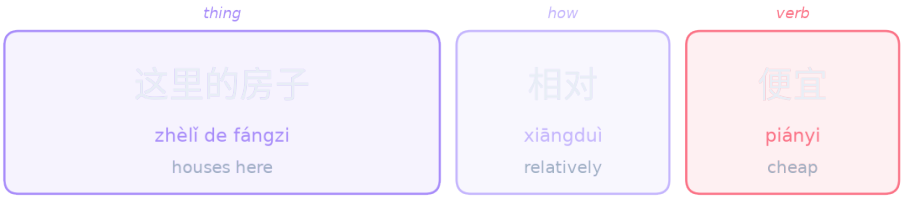
How it works. 相对 compares with other cases and softens the statement (relatively, not "very"). 相对来说 starts a balanced comparison. Everyday: 比较. The opposite is 绝对.

相对便宜	相对来说	比较便宜
relatively cheap	comparatively speaking	fairly cheap

Watch out

- 相对便宜 is not "very cheap".

相对 + adjective: relatively



16. 一致 (unanimously; consistent)

Form: group + 一致 + 认为 / 同意 / 决定 · A 和 B (不) 一致

- **大家一致认为这个办法好。** *Dàjiā yízhì rènwéi zhège bànfǎ hǎo.* – Everyone agreed this idea was good.
- **经过讨论，我们一致决定周六出发。** – After discussing it, we all decided to leave on Saturday.
- **他说的和做的不一致。** – What he says doesn't match what he does.

How it works. 一致 (yízhì) before a verb of opinion or decision means a group agrees with no different view. As an adjective it means the same, consistent. Everyday: 都; identical things: 相同.

一致同意	看法一致	不一致
all agree	the same views	don't match

Watch out

- *wrong:* 我一致认为 → 我们一致认为.

大家 + 一致 + verb: all agree



17. 彻底 vs 完全 (thoroughly, completely)

Form: 彻底 + 解决 / 改变 / 忘 / 放弃 · verb + 得 + 彻底

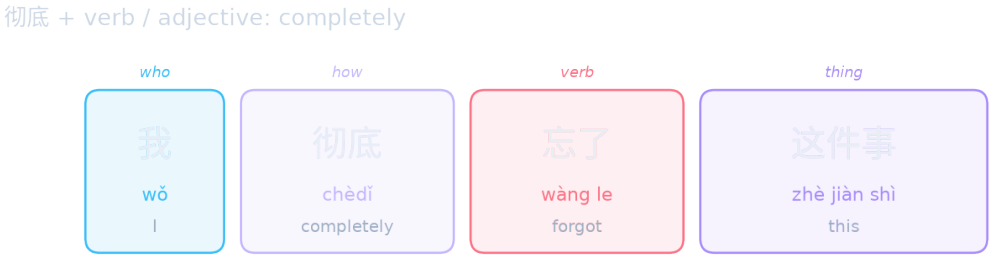
- **对不起，我彻底忘了！** *Duìbuqǐ, wǒ chèdǐ wàng le!* – Sorry, I completely forgot!
- **这次一定要把问题彻底解决。** – This time we must solve the problem once and for all.
- **我完全同意。** – I completely agree.

How it works. 彻底 = thoroughly, to the very bottom, with actions that change, end or clear something. 完全 = completely, with states (同意, 不知道) and many actions. 全 = all, whole.

彻底解决	完全同意	全班
solve once and for all	completely agree	the whole class

Watch out

- *wrong:* 我彻底同意 → 我完全同意.



18. 过分 vs 太 and 过于 (going too far)

Form: (太 / 有点儿) 过分 (了) · 过分 + 紧张 / 担心

- **你这样做太过分了！** *Nǐ zhèyàng zuò tài guòfèn le!* – Doing this is going too far!
- **考试的时候不要过分紧张。** – Don't get too nervous in the exam.
- **今天天气太热了。** – It's too hot today.

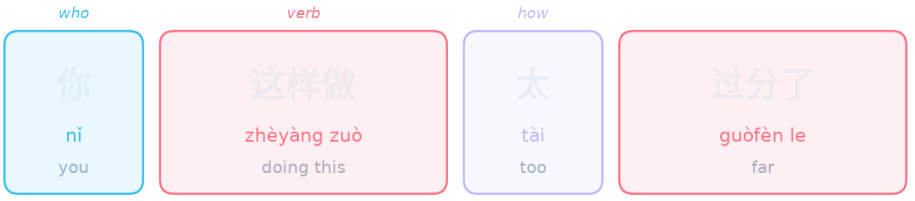
How it works. 过分 judges behaviour or feelings that go too far. Before an adjective it means overly. 太 is the neutral "too"; 过于 is the written "overly".

太过分了	过分紧张	太热了
that's going too far	overly nervous	too hot

Watch out

- *wrong:* 天气过分热 → 天气太热了.

太过分了 / 过分 + adjective



19. 说不定 vs 也许 and 恐怕 (maybe, who knows)

Form: 说不定 + guess · (还) 说不定

- **别等了，他说不定已经进去了。** *Bié děng le, tā shuōbudìng yǐjīng jìnqu le.* – Stop waiting – maybe he's already gone in.
- **带把伞吧，说不定会下雨。** – Take an umbrella – it might rain.
- **他什么时候回来还说不定。** – It's not certain when he'll be back.

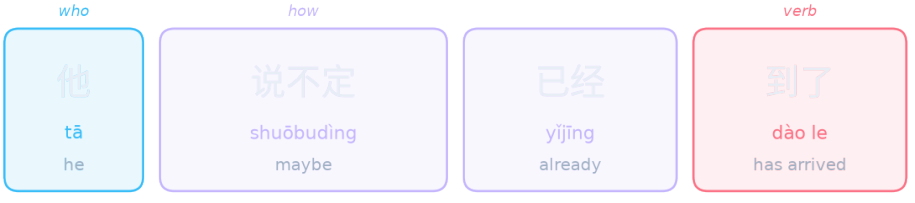
How it works. 说不定 = maybe, who knows (spoken, often a new idea); at the end, "not certain". 也许 / 可能 are neutral. 恐怕 = I'm afraid (a worried guess).

说不定会下雨	还说不定	恐怕来不及
it might rain	not certain	afraid we'll be late

Watch out

- For a worried guess, 恐怕 fits better.

说不定 + guess: maybe, who knows



20. 尽量 + Verb (as much as possible)

Form: subject + (会) + 尽量 + action / 少 + verb / 别 + verb

- **我会尽量早点来。** *Wǒ huì jǐnliàng zǎodiǎn lái.* – I'll try to come as early as I can.
- **我会尽量帮你。** – I'll do what I can to help you.
- **上课时尽量用汉语交流。** – In class, use Chinese as much as you can.
- **尽量少用手机。/ 尽量别在晚上喝咖啡。** – Use your phone as little as possible. / Try not to drink coffee at night.

How it works. 尽量 *jǐnliàng* offers or asks for effort within practical limits. Read the whole phrase: it can increase a useful action (多, 早点) or reduce an unwanted one (少, 别).

尽量	一定
an effort; the outcome may still fail	a commitment to the outcome
我会尽量早点来	我一定八点到

If the bus is late, that does not disprove the effort. If an exact time is essential, state it separately.

尽量 *jǐnliàng*	尽管 *jǐnguǎn*
as much as feasible	feel free to
尽量早点来	有问题尽管问



21. 尽管 + Verb (feel free to)

Form: 尽管 + verb (feel free to) · 尽管 + fact，(但是) … 还是 … (although)

- **有问题尽管问。** *Yǒu wèntí jǐnguǎn wèn.* – If you have questions, feel free to ask.
- **想吃什么尽管点。** – Order whatever you like.
- **你尽管放心，这件事交给我。** – Rest assured; leave this to me.
- **尽管下雨，我们还是去了。** – Although it rained, we still went.

How it works. One written word, two uses. The complete clauses show which one is meant.

Before an action	Opening a clause, then 还是 / 但是
“feel free to, go ahead”	“although” (a concession)
有问题尽管问	尽管有问题，我们还是完成了任务

An invitation covers the stated activity in that exchange, not unrelated actions. It also does not promise that no practical problem can occur.

尽管 *jǐnguǎn*	尽量 *jǐnliàng*
feel free to / although	as much as feasible



22. 互相 + Verb (each other)

Form: participants + 互相 + verb phrase

- **他们互相帮助。** *Tāmen hùxiāng bāngzhù.* – They help each other.
- **我们应该互相帮助。** – We should help one another.

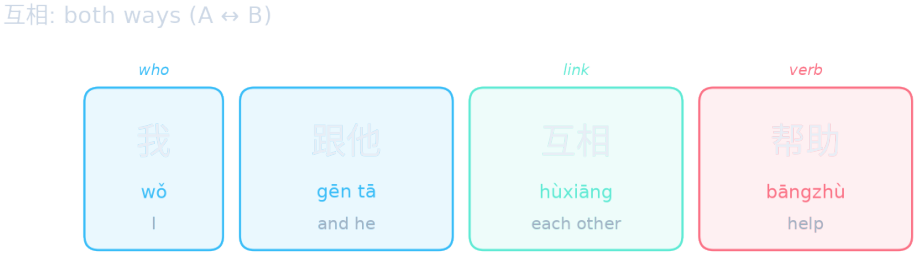
- **我跟他互相帮助。** – He and I help each other.
- **他们互相看了一眼。** – They exchanged a glance.

How it works. 互相 *hùxiāng* "each other" makes the participants both doers and receivers: A → B and B → A. Name the participants before it, or let the context supply them (我跟他 names both). A mutual action can be one completed event (看了一眼); it need not be a habit. In a group, 互相学习 means people learn from one another. The contributions need not be equal: one helps with diagrams, the other with language.

我们互相帮助	我们都帮助老师	梅帮助阿伦
we help one another	each of us helps the teacher	one-way help

Watch out

- 互相 needs a two-way relationship; don't use it as a general word for cooperation.



23. 顺便 (while you're at it / by the way)

Form: main trip / purpose, (subject +) 顺便 + extra action · 顺便问一下, ……

- **我去图书馆，顺便还这本书。** *Wǒ qù túshūguǎn, shùnbiàn huán zhè běn shū.* – I'm going to the library, so I'll return this book while I'm there.
- **你出去，顺便买点菜。** – Since you're going out, pick up some groceries.
- **我去看朋友，顺便把书还给她。** – I visited my friend and returned her book while I was at it.
- **顺便问一下，你周末有空吗?** – By the way, are you free this weekend?

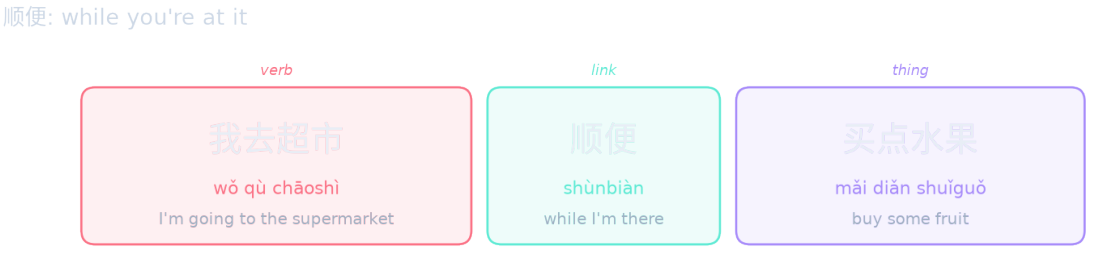
How it works. 顺便 *shùnbiàn* adds an action to an existing trip, purpose or conversation, so it needs no physical travel (顺便问一下). The main purpose can come from the context.

顺便 + action	专门 + action
an extra on the way	the purpose of a special trip
顺便还书	我专门去还书

They can appear together, for different actions: 我专门去银行办事，顺便买了面包.

Watch out

- 顺便 says nothing about how easy the extra task was: 顺便买了面包 doesn't tell you the shop was next door or the queue short.



24. 好 (不) 容易 (with great difficulty)

Form: subject + 好不容易 / 好容易 + (才) + achieved result

- **我好不容易才买到票。** *Wǒ hǎo bù róngyì cái mǎidào piào.* – I only managed to get a ticket with great difficulty.
- **我好容易才买到票。** – I finally got a ticket, after a struggle.
- **他好不容易找到了一份工作。** – He finally found a job.
- **我好不容易买到票，后来却把票弄丢了。** – I got the ticket with great difficulty, then lost it.

How it works. Before an achieved result (买到, 找到), 好不容易 and 好容易 both mean "with great difficulty, finally". 才 adds "only then" but is not required. Neither gives an exact count of attempts or hours; 找了几天才找到 would.

A later change doesn't undo the earlier result: the ticket was bought, then lost.

好不容易才买到	这道题很容易
hard-won	easy

Watch out

- 好容易 is not always the same as 好不容易: in 这个题好容易, it means "very easy". To say something is easy, use 很容易.



25. 白 + Verb (in vain / for nothing)

Form: 白 + verb (in vain) · 没白 + verb (worthwhile)

- **办公室关门了，我白跑了一趟。** *Bàngōngshì guān mén le, wǒ bái pǎole yí tàng.* – The office was closed, so I went there for nothing.
- **他没来，我们白等了一个小时。** – He didn't come, so we waited an hour for nothing.
- **这趟没白来，学到了很多。** – This trip was worth it; I learned a lot.

How it works. 白 *bái* before an action says it failed in its intended purpose: 白跑, 白等, 白忙. 没白 rejects that: "not in vain". It doesn't mean 没来.

The judgement is about one purpose. 我白跑了一趟邮局，没寄成信，不过在路上见到了朋友 is normal: the mailing failed, the trip had another benefit.

Other 白. 这顿饭是白吃的 in a free-meal context means no payment; 白纸 is white paper. Don't force the "in vain" reading onto every 白.



26. 连忙 vs 赶紧 (hurriedly / hurry up)

Form: event, 连忙 + reaction · 赶紧 / 赶快 + verb

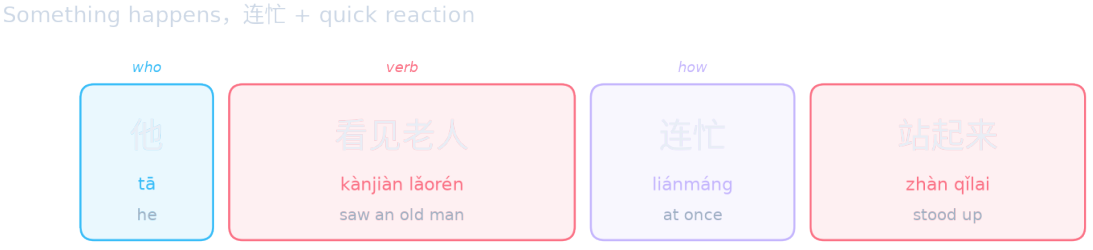
- **他看见老人上车，连忙站起来让座。** *Tā kànjiàn lǎorén shàng chē, liánmáng zhàn qǐlai ràng zuò.* – Seeing an old man get on, he quickly stood up and offered his seat.
- **快下雨了，赶紧回家吧！** – It's about to rain – hurry home!
- **他赶紧给妈妈打了个电话。** – He quickly called his mum.

How it works. 连忙 tells how someone reacted at once to something that happened. 赶紧 and 赶快 also mean "quickly", but they can give orders and advice too.

连忙站起来	赶紧走吧！	我马上就来
quickly stood up (story)	hurry up and go!	I'll be right there

Watch out

- *wrong:* 你连忙走吧 → 你赶紧走吧: 连忙 can't give orders.



27. 特意 vs 顺便 and 故意 (specially / while you're at it / on purpose)

Form: 特意 / 特地 + verb

- **我特意为你做了这个菜。** *Wǒ tèyì wèi nǐ zuò le zhège cài.* – I made this dish specially for you.
- **他特意从上海来看我。** – He came all the way from Shanghai just to see me.
- **他故意不理我。** – He ignored me on purpose.

How it works. 特意 (or 特地) says you did something just for this purpose, usually as a kind effort. 顺便 means "while doing something else". 故意 means "deliberately", often for something unkind.

特意来看我	顺便买了邮票	故意不理我	不是故意的
came just to see me	bought stamps while there	ignored me on purpose	I didn't mean to

Watch out

- To annoy or hurt: *wrong:* 他特意把杯子打破了 → 他故意把杯子打破了.



28. 分别 (respectively, separately)

Form: A 和 B 分别 + verb + C 和 D · 分别 + verb (separately) · 分别 (to part)

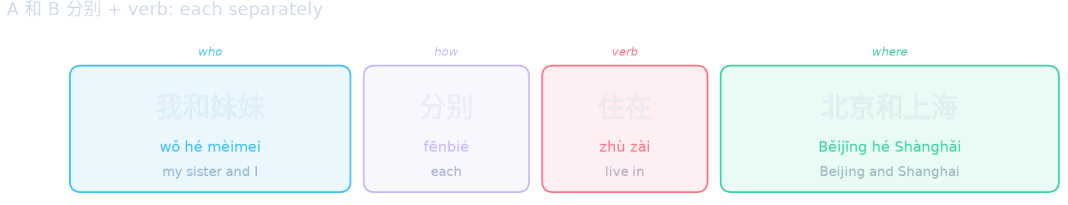
- **我和妹妹分别住在北京和上海。** *Wǒ hé mèimei fēnbié zhù zài Běijīng hé Shànghǎi.* – My sister and I live in Beijing and Shanghai respectively.
- **老师分别和每个学生谈了话。** – The teacher talked to each student separately.
- **我们分别了十年。** – We were apart for ten years.

How it works. As an adverb, 分别 matches two lists in order (A → C, B → D), or means "separately". As a verb, it means to part. 各自 = each (their own); 区别 = a difference.

分别住在北京和上海	各自回家	有什么区别
live in … respectively	each went home	what's the difference

Watch out

- 分别 needs two or more people, things or places to match: *wrong:* 我分别住在北京.



29. 悄悄 vs 安静, 偷偷 and 轻轻 (quietly)

Form: 悄悄 (地) + verb

- **他悄悄地走进了教室。** *Tā qiāoqiāo de zǒu jìn le jiàoshì.* – He quietly walked into the classroom.
- **我们悄悄准备了一个生日晚会。** – We secretly planned a birthday party.
- **春天悄悄地来了。** – Spring has quietly arrived.

How it works. 悄悄 describes an action done quietly or secretly, without others noticing. 安静 is an adjective for a quiet place or person; 偷偷 = sneakily; 轻轻 = gently.

悄悄地走进来	教室里很安静	轻轻地关门
come in quietly	the room is quiet	close the door gently

Watch out

- *wrong:* 教室里很悄悄 → 教室里很安静.



30. 单独 vs 独自 (alone, separately)

Form: 单独 + verb · 独自 (一个人) + verb

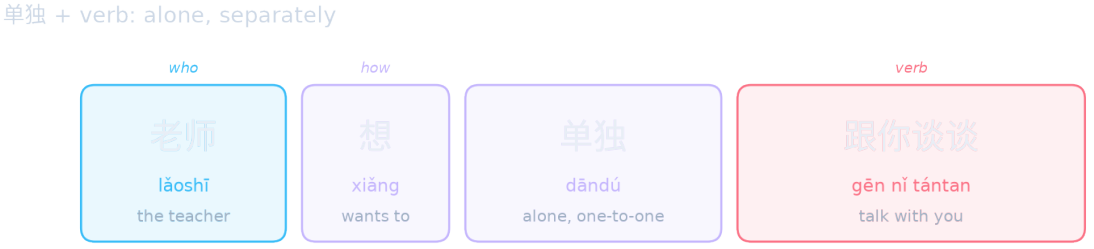
- **老师想单独跟你谈谈。** *Lǎoshī xiǎng dāndú gēn nǐ tántan.* – The teacher wants to talk with you one-to-one.
- **这个箱子比较重，请单独放。** – This box is quite heavy; please put it separately.
- **他独自一个人去了西藏。** – He went to Tibet all by himself.

How it works. 单独 separates one person or thing from a group (alone, separately, one-to-one). 独自 is a person doing something by themselves, often with a feeling of being alone. Everyday: 一个人.

单独谈	单独放	独自去
talk one-to-one	put separately	go alone

Watch out

- To treat a thing separately, use 单独.



31. 总 (always / keep on)

Form: subject + (time / situation) + 总 (是) + predicate · 总会 + outcome

- **他总迟到。/ 他总是迟到。** *Tā zǒng chídào.* – He's always late.
- **周末他总睡到中午。** – At weekends he always sleeps until noon.
- **她总帮助别人。** – She's always helping others.
- **总会好的。** *Zǒng huì hǎo de.* – It'll get better eventually.

How it works. 总 *zǒng* describes a recurring pattern, often within a stated boundary (周末). In this habit use it overlaps with 总是. Recurrence can come with complaint (你怎么总玩手机?) or praise; 总 itself is not negative. Everyday "always" can exaggerate; if exact counts matter, give them.

总 + predicate	one event	总会 …… 的
recurring pattern	one stated past event	an eventual outcome (reassurance)
他总迟到	他昨天迟到了一次	总会好的

Watch out

- Not every 总 can become 总是: 总是会好的 sounds like a general pattern, while 总会好的 looks ahead to an outcome.

总: always · 总会: surely, in the end



32. 曾经 + Verb + 过 (once / formerly)

Form: subject + 曾经 + predicate · 曾经 + verb + 过 (+ object)

- **我曾经住在上海。** *Wǒ céngjīng zhù zài Shànghǎi.* – I once lived in Shanghai.
- **他曾经当过老师。** *Tā céngjīng dāngguo lǎoshī.* – He used to be a teacher.
- **她曾经很害羞，现在能自信地演讲。** – She used to be shy; now she can give speeches confidently.

How it works. 曾经 *céngjīng* places a state or experience in the past. 过 after a suitable verb marks experience (当过, 去过), but it is not required: 她曾经很害羞 is complete without it.

"Once" in English doesn't mean one time here. For an exact count, say it: 我去过一次上海.

Read only what is stated. 我曾经住在上海 tells you about an earlier time; it says nothing about where the person lives now, unless a later clause adds it (……, 现在 ……). A past teaching job does not show the current job.

曾经 + past	future plan
我曾经去过上海	我明年会去上海



33. 再三 + Verb (over and over)

Form: subject + 再三 + verb phrase

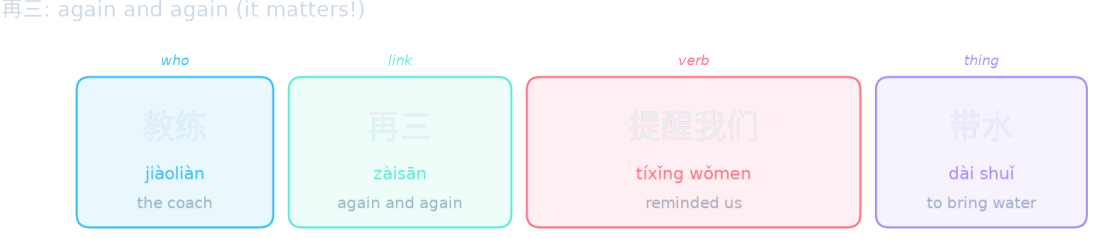
- **教练再三提醒我们带水。** *Jiàoliàn zàisān tíxǐng wǒmen dài shuǐ.* – The coach reminded us over and over to bring water.
- **他再三强调这一点。** – He stressed this point again and again.
- **我再三考虑，还是决定去。** – I thought it over many times and decided to go.
- **老师再三解释，可是我还是不明白。** – The teacher explained it again and again, but I still didn't understand.

How it works. 再三 *zàisān* marks an action repeated with earnest attention, before the verb: 再三提醒, 再三强调, 再三考虑, 再三感谢. Despite the 三, it gives no exact count.

再三提醒	提醒了三次	总迟到
repeated emphasis	an exact count	a recurring habit

Watch out

- Repetition doesn't guarantee a result: read the outcome clause. 再三解释，可是还是不明白 reports failure.
- If only one reminder is recorded, say 她提醒了一次.



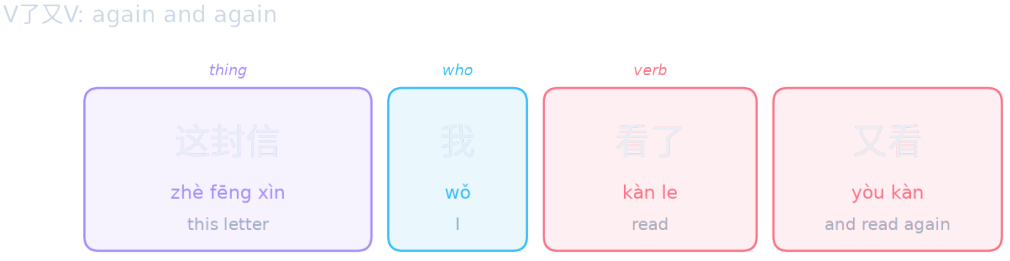
34. Verb + 了 + 又 + Verb (again and again)

Form: verb + 了 + 又 + same verb

- **这封信我看了又看。** *Zhè fēng xìn wǒ kànle yòu kàn.* – I read this letter over and over.
- **他想了又想，还是拒绝了。** – He thought it over again and again, and still said no.
- **昨晚我看了又看，终于发现了错误。** – Last night I checked it again and again and finally found the mistake.

How it works. The same verb repeats around 了又 to stress repeated action: 看了又看, 想了又想, 问了又问. It gives no exact count (他问了三次 would) and no guaranteed result: the next clause tells you what happened. The time comes from the context; 了 here is not a general past-tense ending.

看了又看	看了文字，又听了录音
one action, repeated	two different actions in sequence (also correct)



35. 再也 + 不 / 没 + ... 了 (never again)

Form: 再也不 + verb + 了 (never again) · 再也没 + verb (+ 过) (not again since)

- **我再也不去那家店了。** *Wǒ zài yě bú qù nà jiā diàn le.* – I'll never go to that shop again.
- **毕业后我们再也没见过面。** *Bìyè hòu wǒmen zài yě méi jiànguo miàn.* – We haven't met again since graduation.
- **我再也找不到那本书了。** – I can't find that book any more.

How it works. Read the negative after 再也.

Example	Meaning
我再也不去了	a strong intention about the future
毕业后再也没见过	no repeat in a stated period (since graduation)
再也找不到那本书了	inability now

A strong refusal states a present stance; people can still change their minds. A report about the past needs more evidence before it becomes a claim about every future day.

Watch out

- Final 了 is common in the 不 pattern, but not required in every 再也 sentence: 再也没见过面 has 过 and no 了.



36. 始终 (all along / from start to finish)

Form: subject + 始终 + verb / adjective · 始终没 / 始终不 + verb

- **他始终没说话。** *Tā shǐzhōng méi shuōhuà.* – He didn't say a word from start to finish.
- **她始终相信自己能成功。** – She always believed she could succeed.
- **我始终不明白他为什么走。** – I never understood why he left.

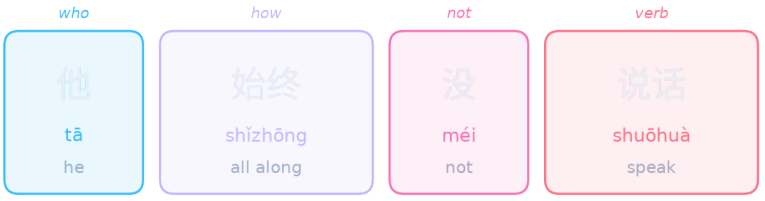
How it works. 始终 covers a whole period, from beginning to end, and says nothing changed. It often describes an attitude or a "never" (始终没, 始终不).

他始终没来	明天我一直在家	一直往前走
he never came (the whole time)	I'll be home all day tomorrow (only 一直)	go straight ahead (only 一直)

Watch out

- With a set future time (明天, 下个月), use 一直, not 始终.
- 始终 goes after the subject, before the verb.

始终: from start to end, without change



37. 仍然 (still)

Form: (time / change), subject + 仍然 + verb · 虽然 …, … 仍然 …

- **十年过去了，他仍然住在这里。** *Shí nián guòqu le, tā réngrán zhù zài zhèlǐ.* – Ten years have passed, and he still lives here.
- **虽然很累，他仍然坚持跑完了。** – Although he was tired, he still kept going to the finish.
- **问题仍然没有解决。** – The problem has still not been solved.

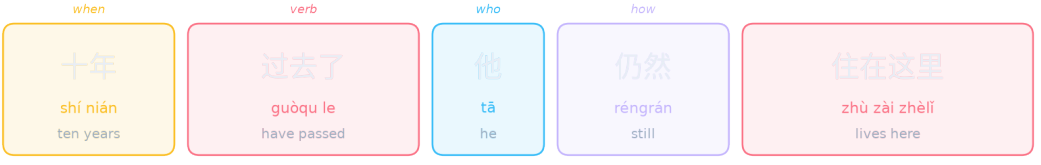
How it works. 仍然 says a situation stayed the same after time passed or something changed. It is the formal, written form of 还 ("still"). 依然 and 仍旧 mean the same.

他仍然住在这里	他还住在这里	我还要一杯
he still lives here (formal)	he still lives here (spoken)	I'd like one more (only 还)

Watch out

- 仍然 only means "still", never "also" or "more".
- 仍然 goes after the subject, before the verb.

仍然: still (after time or a change)



38. 逐渐 vs 逐步 (gradually / step by step)

Form: 逐渐 / 渐渐 + change · 逐步 + verb

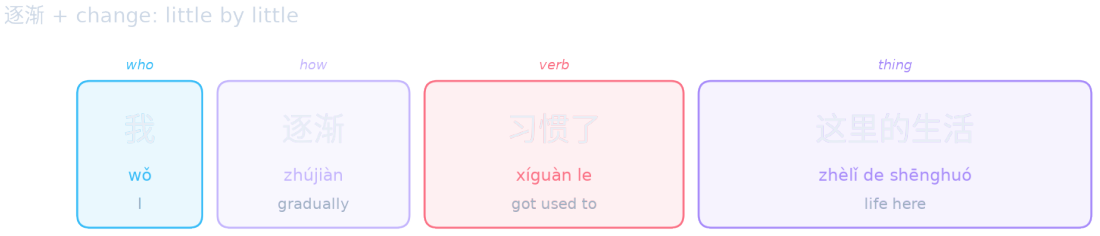
- **我逐渐习惯了这里的生活。** *Wǒ zhújiàn xíguàn le zhèlǐ de shēnghuó.* – I gradually got used to life here.
- **天气逐渐变冷了。** – The weather is gradually getting colder.
- **我们要逐步解决这些问题。** – We need to solve these problems step by step.

How it works. 逐渐 (and the more spoken 渐渐) describes a slow change, above all one that happens by itself. 逐步 describes a change people plan and carry out in stages.

天逐渐黑了	渐渐地，雨停了	逐步提高水平
it slowly got dark	little by little, the rain stopped	raise the level step by step

Watch out

- *wrong:* 天逐步黑了: nobody plans a natural change.



39. 随时 (at any time)

Form: 随时 + verb · 随时可能 / 会 + verb · 随时随地

- **有问题可以随时问我。** *Yǒu wèntí kěyǐ suíshí wèn wǒ.* – If you have questions, you can ask me any time.
- **天这么黑，随时可能下雨。** – It's so dark it could rain at any moment.
- **用手机可以随时随地学习。** – With a phone you can study any time, anywhere.

How it works. 随时 means "at any time": whenever someone wants (offers) or any moment something may happen (warnings with 可能 / 会). It goes before the verb.

随时问我	总是迟到	及时提醒
ask me any time	always late	remind in time

Watch out

- *wrong:* 他随时迟到 → 他总是迟到 (always).



40. 从此 and 至今 (from then on / to this day)

Form: event，从此 + new state ·至今 (还 / 仍然) …

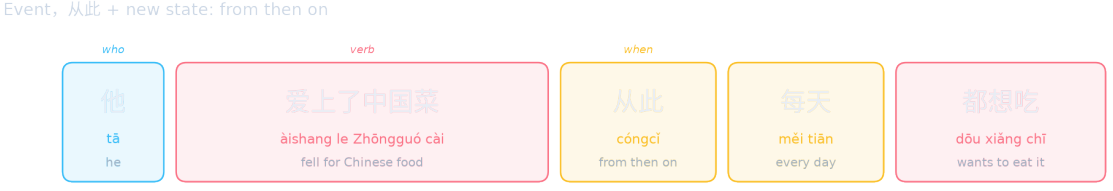
- **他被老师批评了一次，从此再也没迟到过。** *Tā bèi lǎoshī pīpíng le yí cì, cóngcǐ zài yě méi chídào guo.* – He was told off by the teacher once, and from then on he was never late again.
- **这件事我至今还记得。** – I still remember this to this day.
- **他十年前离开了家乡，至今没有回去过。** – He left his hometown ten years ago and hasn't been back since.

How it works. 从此 follows an event and gives the new situation that started there. 至今 looks back from today: something is still true now. 从来不 / 没 means "never" with no turning point.

从此再也没迟到	至今还记得	从来不喝咖啡
never late again from then on	still remember to this day	never drinks coffee

Watch out

- *wrong:* 我从此喜欢火锅: 从此 needs an event before it.



41. 立刻 and 立即 vs 马上 (at once / soon)

Form: 立刻 / 立即 + action ·马上 (就要 … 了)

- **一听到消息，他立刻赶到了医院。** *Yì tīngdào xiāoxi, tā lìkè gǎndào le yīyuàn.* – As soon as he heard the news, he rushed straight to the hospital.

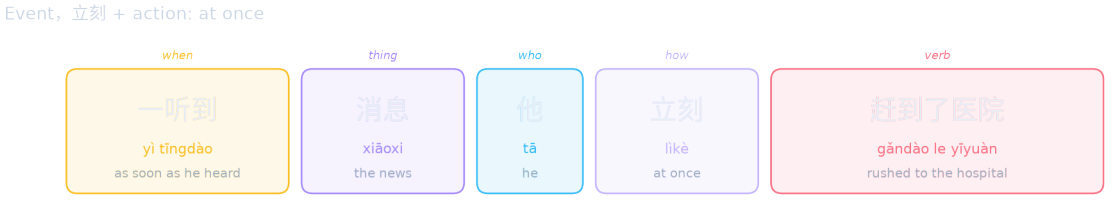
- **请立即离开大楼。** – Please leave the building immediately.
- **马上就要放假了。** – The holidays are coming soon.

How it works. 立刻 and 立即 mean "at once, with no delay"; 立即 is more formal. 马上 means "right away" but also "soon", so only 马上 works for something a few days away.

立刻就去	立即离开	马上就要放假了
go right now	leave immediately	the holidays are coming soon

Watch out

- *wrong:* 立刻就要考试了 (next week) → 马上就要考试了.



42. 偶然 vs 偶尔 (by chance / now and then)

Form: 偶然 + verb · 偶然的 + noun · 不是偶然的

- **我在书店偶然遇到了一位老同学。** *Wǒ zài shūdiàn ǒurán yùdào le yí wèi lǎo tóngxué.* – I ran into an old classmate by chance in a bookshop.
- **在一次偶然的机会中，我认识了她。** – I met her by chance.
- **他的成功不是偶然的。** – His success is no accident.

How it works. 偶然 means "by chance, not planned". It goes before the verb or, with 的, before a noun. Don't confuse it with 偶尔 (now and then, how often). The opposite of 偶然 is 必然 (bound to happen).

偶然遇到	偶尔去看电影	必然的结果
meet by chance	go to the cinema now and then	an inevitable result

Watch out

- *wrong:* 我偶然去看电影 (how often) → 我偶尔去看电影.

偶然 + meeting: by chance



43. 事先 vs 提前 (beforehand / ahead of time)

Form: 事先 + verb · 提前 (+ amount of time) + verb · 提前到 + time

- **去之前最好事先打个电话。** *Qù zhīqián zuìhǎo shìxiān dǎ ge diànhuà.* – You'd better phone in advance before you go.
- **我们提前十分钟到了。** – We arrived ten minutes early.
- **会议提前到星期三了。** – The meeting has been moved forward to Wednesday.

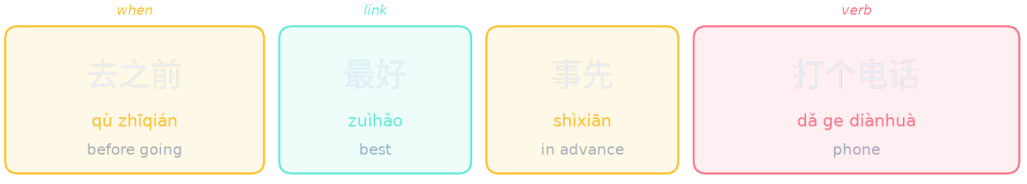
How it works. 事先 means "beforehand": you prepare, ask or tell before an event. 提前 means "earlier than planned"; it can take an amount of time, and it can be a verb (考试提前了).

事先准备好	提前十分钟到	会议提前了
prepare in advance	arrive ten minutes early	the meeting was moved earlier

Watch out

- *wrong:* 事先十分钟到 → 提前十分钟到. *wrong:* 考试事先了 → 考试提前了.

事先 + verb: beforehand



44. 纷纷 (one after another, many)

Form: many people / things + 纷纷 + verb

- **同学们纷纷举手。** *Tóngxuémen fēnfēn jǔ shǒu.* – The students put up their hands one after another.

- **消息一出，网友们纷纷发表看法。** – As soon as the news came out, people online gave their opinions one after another.
- **秋天到了，树叶纷纷落下。** – Autumn has come, and the leaves are falling one after another.

How it works. 纷纷 describes many people or things doing the same thing one after another, often as a reaction. It needs many doers and can't give an order. 陆续 = one after another over a period of time.

大家纷纷举手	客人陆续到了	一个一个地进来
hands went up one after another	guests arrived over time	come in one by one

Watch out

- *wrong:* 他纷纷举手 (one person). *wrong:* 请大家纷纷发言 → 请大家积极发言.



45. 反复 vs 重复 (again and again / to repeat)

Form: 反复 + verb · 重复 (一遍) · 一再 + verb

- **老师反复强调这一点。** *Lǎoshī fǎnfù qiángdiào zhè yì diǎn.* – The teacher stressed this point again and again.
- **请你再重复一遍。** – Please say it once more.
- **他一再提醒我带护照。** – He kept reminding me to bring my passport.

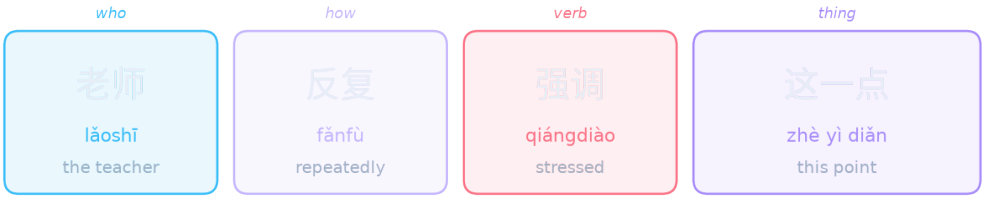
How it works. 反复 says how you do a verb: again and again, often with care (反复练习, 反复检查). 重复 is the verb "to repeat" (the same words or act), or "duplicated". 一再 = again and again, often requests or warnings.

反复练习	重复一遍	一再提醒
practise again and again	repeat once	keep reminding

Watch out

- *wrong:* 请反复一遍 → 请重复一遍.

反复 + verb: again and again



46. 从前 vs 以前 and 过去 (long ago)

Form: 从前 … (，现在 …) · event + 以前 · 过去 (the past)

- **从前有一个小村子 ……** *Cóngqián yǒu yí ge xiǎo cūnzi …* – Once upon a time there was a small village …
- **从前这里是一片农田，现在成了大城市。** – Long ago this was farmland; now it's a big city.
- **睡觉以前要刷牙。** – Brush your teeth before going to bed.

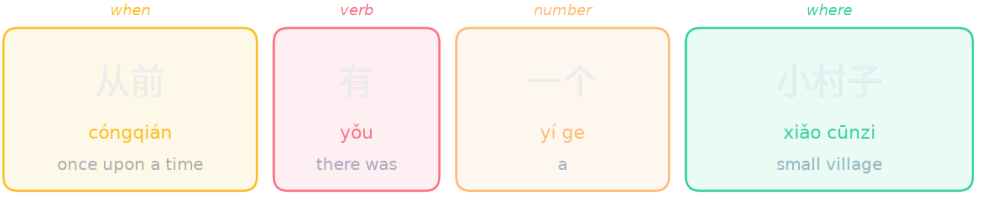
How it works. 从前 is a time word for the distant past and opens stories; it sounds a little written. 以前 is everyday and can follow an event (睡觉以前), even in the future. 过去 = the past, also a noun.

从前有一个村子	睡觉以前	过去的事
once upon a time, a village	before bed	things in the past

Watch out

- *wrong:* 睡觉从前 → 睡觉以前.

从前 + story opening



47. 最初 vs 当初 (at first / back then)

Form: 最初 …, 后来 / 现在 … · 最初的 + noun · 当初 (back then)

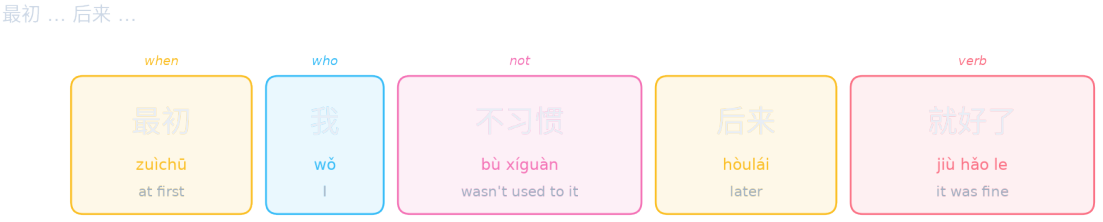
- **最初我不太习惯，后来就好了。** *Zuìchū wǒ bú tài xíguàn, hòulái jiù hǎo le.* – At first I wasn't really used to it, but later it was fine.
- **我最初的想法是学医。** – My first idea was to study medicine.
- **早知道这样，当初就不该来。** – If I'd known, I shouldn't have come back then.

How it works. 最初 marks the start of a process and often pairs with 后来 or 现在. 当初 looks back at a past decision, often with regret. Everyday: 一开始; written: 起初.

最初 … 后来 …	当初	一开始
at first … later …	back then	at first (speech)

Watch out

- For regret about a past choice, use 当初, not 最初.



48. 差点没: near misses and context

Form: 差点 (没) + verb, + clause giving the actual outcome

- **我差点没赶上车，幸好司机等了我。** *Wǒ chàdiǎn méi gǎnshang chē, xìnghǎo sījī děngle wǒ.* – I almost missed the bus; luckily the driver waited for me.
- **我差点赶上车，可是车开走了。** – I almost caught the bus, but it left.
- **我差点摔倒，幸好扶住了栏杆。** – I almost fell; luckily I grabbed the rail.
- **我没赶上车，只好等下一班。** – I missed the bus and had to wait for the next one.

How it works. Separate the close call from what actually happened. The following clause (幸好 ……, 可是 ……, 结果还是 ……) usually settles the outcome.

Account	Actual result
我差点没赶上，幸好最后赶上了。	caught it
我差点赶上车，可是车开走了。	missed it
我差点摔倒，幸好扶住了栏杆。	didn't fall

In near-accidents, speakers also say 我差点没摔倒 with the same meaning: here 没 does not work like an ordinary negative. The "wanted / unwanted result" tendency (HSK 4) helps, but it does not settle every isolated sentence.

Watch out

- Don't decide the outcome by counting negatives. If it matters, state it: 我差点没赶上，幸好最后赶上了. If an account leaves it unclear, ask.



49. 再不 … 就 … 了: a conditional warning

Form: (subject +) 再不 + action，(subject +) 就 + consequence + 了

- **再不走，我们就迟到了。** *Zài bù zǒu, wǒmen jiù chídào le.* – If we don't leave now, we'll be late.
- **你再不复习，就来不及了。** – If you don't start revising, it'll be too late.
- **再不下雨，庄稼就要干死了。** – If it doesn't rain soon, the crops will die.
- **火车八点开，再不走就来不及了。** – The train leaves at eight; if we don't go now, we won't make it.

How it works. A warning: if the action still doesn't happen soon (condition), the consequence follows. The consequence is predicted, not yet real. The condition can be a natural situation, not only something the listener chooses. For a warning people can check, state the deadline separately.

再不 + verb，就 ……	再也不 + verb + 了
warns against further delay	a strong "never again"
再不去，就来不及了	我再也不去了

再不 … 就 … 了: a warning



50. 差很多 (differ a lot)

Form: A 和 B 的 + dimension + 差很多 · 差 + exact amount

- **这两张票的价格差很多。** *Zhè liǎng zhāng piào de jiàgé chà hěn duō.* – The prices of these two tickets are very different.
- **我们俩的想法差很多。** – Our ideas are very different.
- **这两张票分别是二十元和八十元，价格差六十元。** – The two tickets cost 20 and 80 yuan: a difference of 60 yuan.

How it works. 差 *chà* states a gap between a named pair on one dimension: price, quality, ideas. 差很多 adds the speaker's judgement that the gap is large; whether it is large depends on the scale (2 yuan on 45 is small). Give the values when you have them. To say which side is higher, add it: 第一家便宜六十元.

差很多	差不多	很差	差点
very different	about the same	poor (one thing)	nearly
质量差很多	价格差不多	质量很差	差点迟到

Watch out

- 差很多 doesn't tell you which is cheaper or better, and a price gap doesn't prove a quality gap.



51. 幸亏 (luckily / thanks to)

Form: 幸亏 + lucky fact, 不然 / 要不然 + (就) bad result · 幸亏 …, 才 …

- **幸亏你提醒我带伞，不然我就淋湿了。** *Xìngkuī nǐ tíxǐng wǒ dài sǎn, bùrán wǒ jiù línshī le.* – Luckily you reminded me to bring an umbrella, or I'd have got soaked.
- **幸亏他开车送我，我才赶上了飞机。** – Luckily he drove me, so I made the plane.
- **我们幸亏早出发了。** – Luckily we set off early.

How it works. 幸亏 points to the fact that saved you from something bad. The next clause says what would have happened without it (不然 … 就 …) or what it made possible (才 …). 幸好 means the same.

幸亏带了伞	好在带了伞	很幸运
luckily (a bad result avoided)	at least (one good point)	lucky (plain good news)

Watch out

- *wrong:* 幸亏我抽到了一等奖 → 我很幸运, 抽到了一等奖 (no danger was avoided).
- *wrong:* 我很幸亏: 幸亏 is an adverb.

幸亏 + lucky fact，不然 + what would have happened



52. 难免 (bound to / hard to avoid)

Form: situation + 难免 (会) + unwelcome result · … 是难免的

- **第一次上台难免会紧张。** *Dì-yī cì shàng tái nánmiǎn huì jǐnzhāng.* – It's natural to be nervous the first time you're on stage.
- **新手难免出错。** – Beginners are bound to make mistakes.
- **吵架是难免的。** – Arguments are unavoidable.

How it works. 难免 says that, in this situation, something (usually unwelcome) is hard to avoid. It is often used to comfort ("it's normal") or to warn. 免不了 means the same and is more spoken.

难免出错	避免出错	出错是难免的
bound to make mistakes	avoid making mistakes	mistakes are unavoidable

Watch out

- 避免 is a verb (to avoid); 难免 says it can't be avoided.
- 难免不出错 usually means the same as 难免出错; write the simple form.

难免: it's natural that (it will happen)



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 毕竟 (after all)

1. Don't be too strict; he's only a child, after all. 别太严格，他 …… 还是个孩子。

2. Which reason fits 他毕竟是新手，……?

- A. ……，我们开除他吧。
- B. ……，他是专家。
- C. ……，给他一点时间。
- D. ……，他从来不错。

3. Which word order is correct?

- A. 他是毕竟新手。
- B. 毕竟他是新手。
- C. 他是新手毕竟。
- D. 新手他毕竟是。

4. True or false? 毕竟 proves that the reason is true. If false, correct it.

5. Say in Chinese: "It's his decision, after all; we should respect it."

6. After all, it's his first time.

Put in order: 毕竟 / 第一次。/ 这是 / 他

■ 2. 反正 (anyway / in any case)

7. You decide; I'm free either way. 你决定吧，…… 我都有空。

8. Choose the best ending: 不管你信不信，……

- A. 因为我信。
- B. 所以我信。
- C. 反正我信。
- D. 但是我信吗?

9. In 反正时间还早，我们慢慢走, what does 反正 do?

- A. asks a question
- B. gives a deadline
- C. marks the past
- D. gives a reason that makes the suggestion fine

10. True or false? 反正 always means the speaker has made a firm decision. If false, correct it.

11. Say in Chinese: "We don't know yet anyway; let's wait for the notice."

12. Whatever you say, I'm going anyway.

Put in order: 要去。/ 我 / 反正 / 不管你 / 怎么说，

■ 3. 干脆 (just / simply / might as well)

13. It's broken after three repairs; let's just buy a new one. 修了三次还坏，…… 买个新的吧。

14. In 她回答得很干脆, 干脆 describes…

- A. doing something in vain
- B. the time
- C. a decisive, clear manner
- D. a reason

15. Which sentence uses 干脆 to suggest a simpler option?

- A. 他说得干脆了吗?
- B. 干脆很好。
- C. 他干脆的人。
- D. 打车太贵，干脆走路去吧。

16. True or false? 干脆不回答了 means she answered quickly. If false, correct it.

17. Say in Chinese: "Let's just do it ourselves."

18. She simply stopped talking.

Put in order: 干脆 / 她 / 不 / 说话 / 了。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 4. 简直: strong evaluation and comparison

19. The scenery is just like a painting. 这里的风景 …… 像画一样。

20. 这间屋子简直像冰箱一样 means…

- A. the room is small
- B. the room has a fridge
- C. the room is a fridge
- D. the room is extremely cold

21. Which sentence uses 简直 naturally?

- A. 简直他走了。
- B. 我简直不敢相信!
- C. 他简直是三点来的。
- D. 我简直有一本书。

22. True or false? 简直 can strengthen criticism as well as praise. If false, correct it.

23. Say in Chinese: "This is simply amazing!"

24. I simply can't believe my eyes.

Put in order: 我 / 不敢相信 / 简直 / 自己的眼睛。

■ 5. Advanced 都 (already / even)

25. It's already eleven; let's go to bed. …… 十一点了，睡觉吧!

26. In 他急得饭都吃不下, what does 都 mean?

- A. already
- B. always
- C. all of them
- D. even

27. Which sentence says "everyone came"?

- A. 都我们来了。
- B. 我们都来了。
- C. 我们来都了。
- D. 我们来了都。

28. True or false? In 饭都凉了, 都 means "all the rice". If false, correct it.

29. Correct the mistake: 这么简单的题他不都会做。

30. Can't even do such an easy question.

Put in order: 都 / 不 / 这么简单的题 / 会做。

■ 6. Advanced 还 ... 呢

31. Keep your voice down; the baby is still asleep. 小声点，孩子 …… 在睡觉呢。

32. What does 还专家呢，连这个都不懂 express?

- A. praise for an expert
- B. that he is still an expert
- C. a question about his job
- D. mockery of someone who claims to be an expert

33. Which sentence reassures someone who is rushing?

- A. 还时间早呢。
- B. 时间还早呢，别着急。
- C. 时间早还呢。
- D. 还专家呢!

34. True or false? 还老师呢，连这个字都不认识 is friendly praise. If false, correct it.

35. It's still raining outside.

Put in order: 呢。 / 下雨 / 还 / 外面 / 在

36. Say in Chinese: "He hasn't come back yet."

■ 7. 未必 / 不见得 (not necessarily)

37. Complete: "Expensive things are not necessarily good." 贵的东西 …… 好。

38. Build: "He doesn't necessarily know about this."

Put in order: 知道 / 不见得 / 这件事。 / 他

39. What does 便宜的未必不好 mean?

- A. Cheap things are never good.
- B. Cheap things aren't necessarily bad.
- C. Cheap things are always bad.

40. True or false? 他未必来 and 他一定不来 mean the same. If false, correct it.

41. "This film will definitely be popular." You doubt it. Which short reply fits?

- A. 不知道得。
- B. 未必不。
- C. 不见得。

42. A classmate says: "Students who study the longest always get the best marks." Disagree politely in two sentences, using 未必 or 不见得. Use 未必 / 不见得. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 8. 恨不得 (wish one could / itching to)

43. Complete: “I wish I could fly home right now.” 我 …… 马上飞回家。

44. Build: “I wish a day had 48 hours.”

Put in order: 一天 / 恨不得 / 有四十八个小时。/ 我

45. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我不恨不得喝咖啡。
- B. 我恨不得一杯咖啡。
- C. 我恨不得马上喝一杯咖啡。

46. “I can’t bear to leave my old friends.” Which word fits? 我 _____ 离开老朋友。

- A. 巴不得
- B. 恨不得
- C. 舍不得

47. True or false? In 恨不得, 恨 means “hate”. If false, correct it.

48. You are stuck in a long, boring meeting and your favourite team is playing. Say what you wish you could do, using 恨不得. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 9. 仿佛 (as if)

49. Complete: “Grandpa was so happy he looked ten years younger.” 爷爷高兴得 …… 年轻了十岁。

50. Build: “He slept soundly, as if nothing had happened.”

Put in order: 什么都没发生过 / 仿佛 / 一样。/ 他睡得很香，

51. “He doesn’t seem to be home.” Which is the everyday way to say it?

- A. 他好像不在家。
- B. 他仿佛不在家。

52. Which word can close a 仿佛 picture at the end of the clause?

- A. 而已
- B. 似的
- C. 的话

53. True or false? 仿佛 is mainly used in written descriptions and stories. If false, correct it.

54. Describe a beautiful place you have visited in two sentences. Use 仿佛 once with a picture, and close it with 一样 or 似的. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 10. 相当 (quite) and 相当于 (equal to)

55. Complete: "He speaks Chinese quite fluently." 他的中文说得 …… 流利。

56. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 这家饭馆相当好。
- B. 这家饭馆相当很好。

57. "He is much taller than me." Which is right?

- A. 他比我高得多。
- B. 他比我相当高。

58. Build: "One kilometre equals two li."

Put in order: 相当于 / 里。/ 两 / 一公里

59. Put them in the usual order, from weakest to strongest.

- A. 相当 → 比较 → 非常
- B. 非常 → 相当 → 比较
- C. 比较 → 相当 → 非常

60. Describe your new school or job in two sentences: use 相当 once, and compare two amounts with 相当于. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 11. 的确 vs 确实 and 真的 (indeed)

61. Complete: "You're right – this question really is hard." 你说得对，这个问题 …… 很难。

62. How is 的 read in 的确?

- A. dí
- B. de

63. Build: "This method is indeed good, but it takes too much time."

Put in order: 的确好，/ 这个办法 / 但是 / 太花时间了。

64. Which word can you use alone as a question, "Really?"

- A. 真的吗?
- B. 的确吗?

65. True or false? 确实 can also be an adjective, as in 消息确实. If false, correct it.

66. A classmate says online classes are convenient. Agree with 的确, then add a problem with 但是. Use 的确 or 确实 and 真的. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 12. 更加 vs 更 (even more)

67. Complete: "Computers are even more important now than before." 现在电脑比以前 …… 重要。

68. Which is correct?

- A. 现在比以前很重要。
- B. 现在比以前更加重要。

69. "It's getting colder and colder." Which is right?

- A. 天气越来越冷了。
- B. 天气更加冷了。

70. Build: "After the teacher's talk, he studied even harder."

Put in order: 他学习 / 努力了。/ 更加 / 听了老师的话,

71. True or false? Before a one-character adjective like 好, 更 sounds more natural than 更加. If false, correct it.

72. Compare your Chinese now with a year ago in two sentences: one in everyday speech with 更, one for a written report with 更加. Use 更加 or 更. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 13. 绝对 (absolutely, definitely)

73. Complete: "Don't worry, I absolutely won't tell anyone." 放心，我 …… 不会告诉别人。

74. You see your friend's lights are off, but you're not sure. Which fits?

- A. 他可能不在家。
- B. 他绝对不在家。

75. "You must come!" (strong advice) Which is most natural?

- A. 你一定要来!
- B. 你绝对要来!

76. Build: "The dumplings here are absolutely delicious!"

Put in order: 饺子 / 绝对 / 好吃! / 这家的

77. True or false? 没有绝对的自由 uses 绝对 as an adjective, "absolute". If false, correct it.

78. Recommend a restaurant or shop to a friend. Use 绝对 for one strong opinion and 可能 for one thing you are not sure about. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 14. 唯一 vs 只有 (the only)

79. Complete: “This is the only way.” 这是 …… 的办法。

80. “I have only one older brother.” Which is right?

- A. 我唯一有一个哥哥。
- B. 我只有一个哥哥。

81. “He is my only older brother.” Which is right?

- A. 他是我唯一的哥哥。
- B. 他是我只有的哥哥。

82. Build: “The only thing I’m worried about is the weather.”

Put in order: 唯一担心的 / 天气。/ 是 / 我

83. True or false? 唯一 usually takes 的 before a noun. If false, correct it.

84. Describe your class or family in two sentences: who is the only one who can do something (唯一), and what the only thing you worry about is. Use 唯一 or 只有. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 15. 相对 vs 比较 (relatively)

85. Complete: “Houses here are relatively cheap.” 这里的房子 …… 便宜。

86. 这里的房子相对便宜。What does it mean?

- A. Houses here are very cheap.
- B. Houses here are cheaper than in other places.

87. Build: “Comparatively speaking, the metro is more convenient than a taxi.”

Put in order: 比打车 / 方便。/ 相对来说，/ 坐地铁

88. Which word is the opposite of 相对?

- A. 绝对
- B. 比较

89. True or false? 相对 can describe tourists, prices or time, compared with other cases. If false, correct it.

90. Compare two ways of studying (in a library or at home, alone or in a group) in two balanced sentences. Use 相对来说 and 相对 + adjective. Use 相对 or 比较. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 16. 一致 (unanimously; consistent)

91. Complete: “Everyone agreed this idea was good.” 大家 …… 认为这个办法好。

92. Which is correct?

- A. 我们一致认为这个办法好。
- B. 我一致认为这个办法好。

93. 他说的和做的不一致。What does it mean?

- A. What he says doesn't match what he does.
- B. He says and does nothing.

94. Build: "After discussing it, we all decided to leave on Saturday."

Put in order: 一致决定 / 经过讨论， / 周六出发。/ 我们

95. True or false? In 一致, 一 is read yí. If false, correct it.

96. Report the result of a class discussion in two sentences: what everyone agreed (一致), and one point where views were not the same (不一致). Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 17. 彻底 vs 完全 (thoroughly, completely)

97. Complete: "This time we must solve the problem once and for all." 这次一定要把问题 …… 解决。

98. "I completely agree." Which is right?

- A. 我彻底同意。
- B. 我完全同意。

99. "The whole class came." Which is right?

- A. 全班都来了。
- B. 彻底班都来了。

100. Build: "The big clean should be a bit more thorough."

Put in order: 大扫除 / 一点儿。/ 彻底 / 要做得

101. True or false? 我完全不知道 means "I had no idea at all." If false, correct it.

102. Describe a habit you changed completely (彻底改变 / 彻底放弃), and say one thing you completely agree with (完全同意). Use 彻底 or 完全. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 18. 过分 vs 太 and 过于 (going too far)

103. Complete: "Doing this is going too far!" 你这样做太 …… 了!

104. "It's too hot today." Which is right?

- A. 今天天气太热了。
- B. 今天天气过分热。

105. "Don't get too nervous in the exam." Which fits?

- A. 考试的时候不要过分热。
- B. 考试的时候不要过分紧张。

106. Build: "What he said was a bit over the top."

Put in order: 有点儿 / 过分。/ 他说的话

107. True or false? 过于 is a written word for "overly". If false, correct it.

108. Tell a friend about something someone did that went too far (太过分了), and

give one piece of advice with 不要过分 + feeling. Use 过分 or 太 and 过于. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 19. 说不定 vs 也许 and 恐怕 (maybe, who knows)

109. Complete: "Take an umbrella – it might rain." 带把伞吧，…… 会下雨。

110. You're late for a train and worried. Which fits best?

- A. 说不定来不及了，太好了！
- B. 恐怕来不及了。

111. 他什么时候回来还说不定。What does it mean?

- A. It's not certain when he'll be back.
- B. He will certainly be back soon.

112. Build: "Stop waiting – maybe he's already gone in."

Put in order: 说不定 / 他 / 别等了，/ 已经进去了。

113. True or false? 说不定他会同意呢！ sounds hopeful. If false, correct it.

114. A friend is sad they didn't get into a club. Cheer them up with 说不定, and add one worried thought with 恐怕. Use 说不定 or 也许 and 恐怕. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 20. 尽量 + Verb (as much as possible)

115. I'll try to come as early as possible. 我会 …… 早点来。

116. Which means "Try not to drink coffee at night"?

- A. 尽量喝咖啡在晚上。
- B. 别尽量晚上喝咖啡。
- C. 尽量别在晚上喝咖啡。
- D. 晚上尽量咖啡。

117. Which promise is stronger than 我会尽量来?

- A. 我也许来。
- B. 我想来。
- C. 我可能来。
- D. 我一定来。

118. True or false? 我会尽量帮你 promises that the problem will be solved. If false, correct it.

119. Say in Chinese: "Use your phone as little as possible."

120. In class, use Chinese as much as you can.

Put in order: 上课时 / 用汉语 / 交流。/ 尽量

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 21. 尽管 + Verb (feel free to)

121. If you have questions, feel free to ask. 有问题 …… 问。

122. In 尽管下雨，我们还是去了, 尽管 means…

- A. because
- B. feel free to
- C. although
- D. if

123. Choose the best second half: 尽管他很累，……

- A. 因为他很忙。
- B. 他还是把工作做完了。
- C. 所以他睡觉了。
- D. 尽管问吧。

124. True or false? In 你尽管放心, 尽管 means "although". If false, correct it.

125. Say in Chinese: "Order whatever you like."

126. Although it was late, he still called me.

Put in order: 他 / 还是 / 很晚了， / 尽管 / 给我打了电话。

■ 22. 互相 + Verb (each other)

127. We should help each other. 我们应该 …… 帮助。

128. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我们互相帮助。
- B. 互相我们帮助。
- C. 我们互相帮助他。
- D. 我们帮助互相。

129. 他们互相看了一眼 means…

- A. they looked for a long time
- B. they each looked at something
- C. one looked at the other
- D. they exchanged a glance

130. True or false? 他帮助我 says the same as 我们互相帮助. If false, correct it.

131. Correct the mistake: 我们要学习互相。

132. He and I help each other.

Put in order: 互相 / 跟 / 他 / 帮助。/ 我

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 23. 顺便 (while you're at it / by the way)

133. Since you're going out, pick up some vegetables. 你出去，…… 买点菜。

134. Which sentence uses 顺便 correctly?

- A. 我顺便去图书馆。
- B. 我去图书馆，顺便还书。
- C. 我去顺便图书馆。
- D. 顺便我很忙。

135. 顺便问一下，你周末有空吗? What does 顺便问一下 do?

- A. raises a side question: by the way
- B. asks an urgent question
- C. apologises
- D. ends the conversation

136. True or false? 顺便 means the extra task is easy. If false, correct it.

137. Say in Chinese: "I visited my friend and returned her book while I was at it."

138. On my way to work I'll post the letter.

Put in order: 这封信。 / 顺便 / 寄 / 我去上班，

■ 24. 好 (不) 容易 (with great difficulty)

139. I finally got a ticket after a lot of trouble. 我 …… 才买到票。

140. 我好容易才找到他 means…

- A. I didn't find him
- B. I find him easily every time
- C. it was very easy to find him
- D. I found him with great difficulty

141. In 这道题好容易, what does 好容易 mean?

- A. with great difficulty
- B. very easy
- C. finally
- D. not easy

142. True or false? 好不容易 tells you exactly how many tries it took. If false, correct it.

143. Say in Chinese: "He finally found a job."

144. We finally got home.

Put in order: 才 / 我们 / 到家。 / 好不容易

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 25. 白 + Verb (in vain / for nothing)

145. The office was closed, so I went for nothing. 办公室关门了，我 …… 跑了一趟。

146. 这趟没白来 means…

- A. the trip was worth it
- B. I didn't come
- C. the trip was white
- D. I came for free

147. Which sentence uses 白 as "in vain"?

- A. 他穿白衬衫。
- B. 他没来，我们白等了。
- C. 白天很热。
- D. 这个是白给的。

148. True or false? 白吃 can mean "eat for free". If false, correct it.

149. Say in Chinese: "We waited an hour for nothing."

150. All that effort was in vain.

Put in order: 了。 / 白费 / 努力 / 这些 / 都

■ 26. 连忙 vs 赶紧 (hurriedly / hurry up)

151. Complete: "Hearing a knock, she hurried to open the door." 听到敲门声，她 …… 去开门。

152. "You'd better leave right away." Which is right?

- A. 你赶紧走吧。
- B. 你连忙走吧。

153. Build: "It's about to rain – hurry home!"

Put in order: 回家 / 快下雨了， / 赶紧 / 吧！

154. "I'll be right there." Which is the usual way to say it?

- A. 我马上就来。
- B. 我连忙就来。

155. True or false? 我们得连忙出发 is correct. If false, correct it.

156. Tell a short story: you smelled smoke in the kitchen. Use 连忙 for what you did, then 赶紧 for what you told your brother. Use 连忙 or 赶紧. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 27. 特意 vs 顺便 and 故意 (specially / while you're at it / on purpose)

157. Complete: "He came all the way from Shanghai just to see me." 他 …… 从上海来看我。

158. "I went to the post office and bought some stamps while I was there." 我去邮局寄信，_____ 买了几张邮票。

- A. 特意
- B. 顺便

159. "He ignored me on purpose." 他 _____ 不理我。

- A. 故意
- B. 特意

160. True or false? 我不是故意的 means "I didn't mean to." If false, correct it.

161. Build: "I made this dish specially for you."

Put in order: 我 / 为你 / 特意 / 做了这个菜。

162. A friend came a long way for your birthday. Thank them with 特意, and say what you did with 顺便 when you picked them up at the station. Use 特意 or 顺便 and 故意. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 28. 分别 (respectively, separately)

163. Complete: "My sister and I live in Beijing and Shanghai respectively." 我和妹妹 …… 住在北京和上海。

164. 我和妹妹分别住在北京和上海。Where does the sister live?

- A. Beijing
- B. Shanghai

165. "We were apart for ten years." Which is right?

- A. 我们分别了十年。
- B. 我们区别了十年。

166. Build: "The teacher talked to each student separately."

Put in order: 谈了话。/ 分别 / 和每个学生 / 老师

167. True or false? 这两个词有什么区别? asks about the difference between two words. If false, correct it.

168. Describe two family members or friends in one sentence each with 分别: where they live, or what they study. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 29. 悄悄 vs 安静, 偷偷 and 轻轻 (quietly)

169. Complete: "He quietly walked into the classroom." 他 …… 地走进了教室。

170. "The classroom is very quiet." Which is right?

- A. 教室里很悄悄。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- B. 教室里很安静。

171. "Close the door gently." Which is right?

- A. 轻轻地关上门。
- B. 偷偷地关上门。

172. Build: "We secretly planned a birthday party."

Put in order: 准备了 / 一个生日晚会。/ 我们 / 悄悄

173. True or false? 偷偷 often suggests doing something you shouldn't. If false, correct it.

174. Tell a short story about a surprise for a friend, in two or three sentences. Use 悄悄 and one of 轻轻 or 安静. Use 悄悄 or 安静, 偷偷 and 轻轻. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 30. 单独 vs 独自 (alone, separately)

175. Complete: "The teacher wants to talk with you one-to-one." 老师想 …… 跟你谈谈。

176. "We'll go over this question separately." Which is right?

- A. 这道题我们单独讲。
- B. 这道题我们独自讲。

177. "He went to Tibet all by himself." Which fits best?

- A. 他单独一个箱子去了西藏。
- B. 他独自一个人去了西藏。

178. Build: "This box is quite heavy; please put it separately."

Put in order: 请 / 单独 / 放。/ 这个箱子比较重，

179. True or false? 独自 stresses doing something without company. If false, correct it.

180. Tell a friend about a trip or activity you did by yourself (独自), and something you asked to do separately (单独). Use 单独 or 独自. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 31. 总 (always / keep on)

181. He's always late. 他 …… 迟到。

182. Which means "It'll get better eventually"?

- A. 会总好的。
- B. 好总会的。
- C. 总会好的。
- D. 总是好的。

183. Where does 总 go in "At weekends he always sleeps until noon"?

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- A. 周末他睡到中午总。
- B. 总周末他睡到中午。
- C. 周末他睡总到中午。
- D. 周末他总睡到中午。

184. True or false? 总 always expresses a complaint. If false, correct it.

185. Complain to a friend: "Why are you always on your phone?"

186. She's always helping others.

Put in order: 她 / 帮助 / 总 / 别人。

■ 32. 曾经 + Verb + 过 (once / formerly)

187. I once lived in Shanghai. 我 …… 住在上海。

188. Which is correct?

- A. 他曾经当过老师。
- B. 他当曾经过老师。
- C. 他曾经当老师过。
- D. 曾经他过当老师。

189. 她曾经很害羞 suggests…

- A. she is still very shy
- B. she was shy before (probably not now)
- C. she will be shy
- D. she was shy once only

190. True or false? 曾经 means "one time". If false, correct it.

191. Say in Chinese: "He used to be a doctor."

192. We once climbed this mountain.

Put in order: 这座山。/ 我们 / 爬过 / 曾经

■ 33. 再三 + Verb (over and over)

193. The coach reminded us over and over to bring water. 教练 …… 提醒我们带水。

194. 我再三考虑，还是决定去 means…

- A. I thought it over many times and decided to go
- B. I thought about it three times exactly
- C. I decided again
- D. I never thought about it

195. Which phrase is NOT a common 再三 combination?

- A. 再三提醒
- B. 再三强调

- C. 再三考虑
- D. 再三高

196. True or false? 老师再三解释 guarantees that the students understood. If false, correct it.

197. Say in Chinese: "He thanked us again and again."

198. He stressed this point again and again.

Put in order: 再三 / 这一点。/ 他 / 强调

■ 34. Verb + 了 + 又 + Verb (again and again)

199. I read this letter over and over. 这封信我看了 …… 看。

200. Which form is correct?

- A. 看又了看
- B. 看了看又
- C. 看了又看
- D. 又看了看了

201. 他想了又想，还是拒绝了。Did he agree?

- A. Yes
- B. No
- C. We can't tell

202. True or false? 问了又问 tells you he asked exactly twice. If false, correct it.

203. Say in Chinese: "She checked it again and again and finally found the mistake."

204. He thought it over and over.

Put in order: 他 / 想。/ 又 / 想了

■ 35. 再也 + 不 / 没 + ... 了 (never again)

205. I'll never go to that shop again. 我 …… 不去那家店了。

206. 毕业后我们再也没见过面 means…

- A. we met again
- B. we met once
- C. we will never meet
- D. we haven't met since graduation

207. Which says "I can't find that book any more"?

- A. 我再也找不到那本书了。
- B. 我不再也找书。
- C. 我找再也不到书。
- D. 我再也没找那本书。

208. True or false? 我再也不吃辣了 is about the future. If false, correct it.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

209. Correct the mistake: 我再也不见过他。

210. He never came back.

Put in order: 没 / 回来 / 他 / 过。/ 再也

■ 36. 始终 (all along / from start to finish)

211. Complete: "He didn't say a word the whole time." 他 …… 没说话。

212. Build: "She always believed she could succeed."

Put in order: 始终 / 相信 / 自己能成功。/ 她

213. "Go straight ahead and you will see the bank." Which word fits? _____ 往前走，就能看到银行。

- A. 始终
- B. 一直

214. "I'll be at home all day tomorrow." Which is right?

- A. 明天我始终在家。
- B. 明天我一直在家。

215. True or false? 我始终不明白 means "I never understood (the whole time)". If false, correct it.

216. Describe someone whose opinion never changed during a long discussion. Use 始终 twice: once with 不 or 没, once with a verb like 相信 or 认为. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 37. 仍然 (still)

217. Complete: "Ten years have passed, and he still lives here." 十年过去了，他 …… 住在这里。

218. Build: "The problem has still not been solved."

Put in order: 仍然 / 解决。/ 没有 / 问题

219. "I'd like one more cup." Which is right?

- A. 我仍然要一杯。
- B. 我还要一杯。

220. Complete: 虽然很累，他 _____ 坚持跑完了。

- A. 所以
- B. 也是
- C. 仍然

221. True or false? 依然 and 仍然 both mean "still". If false, correct it.

222. Write two sentences for a short essay about your hometown: something has changed, but something is still the same. Use 虽然 … 仍然 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 38. 逐渐 vs 逐步 (gradually / step by step)

223. Complete: “The weather is gradually getting colder.” 天气 …… 变冷了。

224. Build: “We need to solve these problems step by step.”

Put in order: 要 / 我们 / 逐步 / 解决这些问题。

225. “It slowly got dark.” Which is natural?

- A. 天逐渐黑了。
- B. 天逐步黑了。

226. “The school plans to introduce the new method in three stages.” 学校计划分三个阶段 _____ 推广这种新方法。

- A. 突然
- B. 逐步

227. True or false? 渐渐地 can start a sentence. If false, correct it.

228. Describe how your Chinese has changed since you started. Use 逐渐 once (a natural change) and 逐步 once (your plan). Use 逐渐 or 逐步. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 39. 随时 (at any time)

229. Complete: “If you have questions, you can ask me any time.” 有问题可以 …… 问我。

230. Build: “It’s so dark it could rain at any moment.”

Put in order: 随时 / 下雨。/ 可能 / 天这么黑，

231. “He is always late.” Which is right?

- A. 他总是迟到。
- B. 他随时迟到。

232. “Luckily you reminded me in time.” 幸亏你 _____ 提醒我。

- A. 及时
- B. 随时

233. True or false? 随时随地 means “any time, anywhere”. If false, correct it.

234. A new classmate has just arrived. Make two friendly offers with 随时. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 40. 从此 and 至今 (from then on / to this day)

235. Complete: “He was told off once, and from then on he was never late again.” 他被老师批评了一次，…… 再也没迟到过。

236. Complete: “I still remember this to this day.” 这件事我 …… 还记得。

237. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我在成都吃了一次火锅，从此就喜欢上了。

- B. 我从此喜欢火锅。

238. "He never drinks coffee." (a habit, no turning point) 他 _____ 不喝咖啡。

- A. 至今
- B. 从此
- C. 从来

239. Build: "He left his hometown ten years ago and hasn't been back since."

Put in order: 回去过。/ 他十年前离开了家乡，/ 没有 / 至今

240. Tell about one moment that changed one of your habits. Use 从此 for the change and 至今 for how things are today. Use 从此 and 至今. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 41. 立刻 and 立即 vs 马上 (at once / soon)

241. Complete: "As soon as he heard the news, he rushed straight to the hospital." 一听到消息，他 …… 赶到了医院。

242. "The exams are coming soon" (next week). Which is right?

- A. 立刻就要考试了。
- B. 马上就要考试了。

243. Which word fits a fire notice best? 请 _____ 离开大楼。

- A. 偶尔
- B. 立即
- C. 逐渐

244. Build: "The holidays are coming soon."

Put in order: 马上 / 了。/ 就要 / 放假

245. True or false? 立即 is more formal than 立刻. If false, correct it.

246. Write a short notice for your class: what to do immediately if the fire alarm rings (立即), and a sentence saying the drill is coming soon (马上). Use 立刻 and 立即 or 马上. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 42. 偶然 vs 偶尔 (by chance / now and then)

247. Complete: "I ran into an old classmate by chance in a bookshop." 我在书店 …… 遇到了一位老同学。

248. "I go to the cinema now and then." 我 _____ 去看电影。

- A. 偶然
- B. 偶尔

249. "a chance opportunity" – which is right?

- A. 一个偶然的机会
- B. 一个偶尔的机会

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

250. “His success was bound to happen.” 他的成功是 _____ 的。

- A. 必然
- B. 偶然

251. True or false? 这不是偶然的 means “This is no accident.” If false, correct it.

252. Tell how you found a favourite place (a café, a park, a shop). Use 偶然 for how you found it and 偶尔 for how often you go now. Use 偶然 or 偶尔. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 43. 事先 vs 提前 (beforehand / ahead of time)

253. Complete: “Let me know beforehand.” …… 告诉我一声。

254. “We arrived ten minutes early.” Which is right?

- A. 我们提前十分钟到了。
- B. 我们事先十分钟到了。

255. “The exam has been moved earlier.” Which is right?

- A. 考试事先了。
- B. 考试提前了。

256. Build: “The meeting has been moved forward to Wednesday.”

Put in order: 会议 / 了。/ 提前 / 到星期三

257. True or false? 事先 goes before the verb. If false, correct it.

258. You are organising a class trip. Write two instructions: one with 事先 (what to prepare) and one with 提前 (when to arrive). Use 事先 or 提前. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 44. 纷纷 (one after another, many)

259. Complete: “The students put up their hands one after another.” 同学们 …… 举手。

260. Which is correct?

- A. 大家纷纷举手。
- B. 他纷纷举手。

261. The teacher wants students to speak up. Which is right?

- A. 请大家纷纷发言。
- B. 请大家积极发言。

262. Build: “Autumn has come, and the leaves are falling one after another.”

Put in order: 秋天到了，/ 落下。/ 树叶 / 纷纷

263. True or false? 陆续 is better than 纷纷 for guests arriving slowly over an evening. If false, correct it.

264. Write two sentences for a school news report: something was announced, and how students reacted. Use 纷纷 once. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 45. 反复 vs 重复 (again and again / to repeat)

265. Complete: "The teacher stressed this point again and again." 老师 …… 强调这一点。

266. "Please say it once more." Which is right?

- A. 请你再反复一遍。
- B. 请你再重复一遍。

267. "We discussed this question again and again, but still couldn't agree." Which is right?

- A. 这个问题我们重复了讨论，还是没有结果。
- B. 这个问题我们反复讨论了，还是没有结果。

268. Build: "I read this article three times over before I understood it."

Put in order: 才 / 读懂。/ 我反复读了三遍 / 这篇文章

269. True or false? 一再 is often used for repeated requests or warnings. If false, correct it.

270. Tell a friend how you prepared for a speaking test. Use 反复 once and 重复 once. Use 反复 or 重复. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 46. 从前 vs 以前 and 过去 (long ago)

271. Complete (a story): "Once upon a time there was a small village …" …… 有一个小村子 ……

272. "Brush your teeth before going to bed." Which is right?

- A. 睡觉从前要刷牙。
- B. 睡觉以前要刷牙。

273. "Call me before you leave tomorrow." Which is right?

- A. 明天出发以前给我打电话。
- B. 明天出发从前给我打电话。

274. Build: "Long ago this was farmland; now it's a big city."

Put in order: 现在 / 成了 / 从前这里是一片农田，/ 大城市。

275. True or false? 过去 can be a noun, "the past". If false, correct it.

276. Describe how your town or school has changed, in two sentences: 从前 …，现在 …. Use 从前 or 以前 and 过去. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 47. 最初 vs 当初 (at first / back then)

277. Complete: “At first I wasn’t really used to it, but later it was fine.” …… 我不太习惯，后来就好了。

278. “If I’d known, I shouldn’t have come back then.” Which fits best?

- A. 早知道这样，当初就不该来。
- B. 早知道这样，最初就不该来。

279. Build: “My first idea was to study medicine.”

Put in order: 想法 / 最初的 / 是学医。/ 我

280. 这个公司最初只有五个人，现在有两百多人了。What does the sentence show?

- A. How the company changed from the start to now
- B. That the company made a bad decision

281. True or false? 一开始 is the everyday way to say “at first”. If false, correct it.

282. Describe how you started a hobby or a subject and how it changed. Use 最初 and 后来 (or 现在). Use 最初 or 当初. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 48. 差点没: near misses and context

283. 我差点没赶上车，幸好司机等了我。Did the speaker catch the bus?

- A. No
- B. Yes
- C. We can’t tell

284. 我差点赶上车，可是车开走了。Did the speaker catch the bus?

- A. Yes
- B. No
- C. We can’t tell

285. I almost fell; luckily I grabbed the rail. 我 …… 摔倒，幸好扶住了栏杆。

286. True or false? With an unwanted event such as 摔倒, 差点摔倒 and 差点没摔倒 both mean “almost fell, but didn’t”. If false, correct it.

287. Say in Chinese: “I almost forgot your birthday.”

288. I nearly missed the train.

Put in order: 我 / 差点 / 赶上 / 没 / 火车。

■ 49. 再不 ... 就 ... 了: a conditional warning

289. If we don’t leave now, we’ll be late. …… 走，我们就迟到了。

290. Choose the best ending: 你再不复习，……

- A. 所以复习。
- B. 就来不及了。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- C. 就复习了。
- D. 也很好。

291. 再不下雨，庄稼就要干死了 means…

- A. if it doesn't rain soon, the crops will die
- B. it rained, so the crops died
- C. the crops need sun
- D. it will never rain again

292. True or false? 再不走就迟到了 reports that they were late. If false, correct it.

293. Say in Chinese: "If you don't eat now, the food will get cold."

294. If he doesn't come soon, we'll go without him.

Put in order: 我们 / 走了。/ 就 / 再不来，/ 他

■ 50. 差很多 (differ a lot)

295. The prices of these two tickets are very different. 这两张票的价格 …… 很多。

296. The tickets cost 20 and 80 yuan. How much is 价格差?

- A. 20 元
- B. 60 元
- C. 80 元
- D. 100 元

297. Which says "Our ideas are very different"?

- A. 我们差俩想法。
- B. 我们俩想法很差。
- C. 我们俩的想法差很多。
- D. 我们很多差想法。

298. True or false? 价格差很多 tells you which ticket is more expensive. If false, correct it.

299. Say in Chinese: "The two phones differ by 500 yuan."

300. True or false? 我的成绩很差 means "my grades are poor". If false, correct it.

■ 51. 幸亏 (luckily / thanks to)

301. Complete: "Luckily you reminded me, otherwise I would have forgotten." 幸亏你提醒我，…… 我就忘了。

302. Build: "Luckily he drove me, so I caught the plane."

Put in order: 我 / 才 / 赶上了 / 飞机。/ 幸亏他开车送我，

303. Which sentence uses 幸亏 correctly?

- A. 幸亏我今天很开心。
- B. 幸亏我们早出发了，不然就迟到了。

- C. 我很幸亏，找到了工作。

304. True or false? 幸好 can replace 幸亏 in 幸亏你提醒我. If false, correct it.

305. You won a prize in a lucky draw. There was no danger. Which fits?

- A. 我很幸运，抽到了奖。
- B. 幸亏我抽到了奖。

306. Tell a friend about a near problem: you almost missed an exam, but your alarm went off just in time. Use 幸亏 … 不然 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 52. 难免 (bound to / hard to avoid)

307. Complete: “Beginners are bound to make mistakes.” 新手 …… 出错。

308. Build: “When you have just arrived somewhere new, it’s natural to feel homesick.”

Put in order: 会 / 刚到一个新地方， / 难免 / 想家。

309. “We must avoid making the same mistake again.” Which word fits? 我们要 _____ 再犯同样的错误。

- A. 难免
- B. 避免

310. True or false? 第一次做，免不了紧张 means about the same as 第一次做，难免紧张. If false, correct it.

311. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 吵架是难免的。
- B. 吵架难免是的。
- C. 吵架是避免的。

312. A younger student is upset after a bad first week at a new school. Comfort them in two sentences using 难免. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

313. Choose 毕竟 or 反正: 别怪他，他 …… 才十岁。/ …… 我也没事，我陪你去吧。

314. Choose 干脆 or 尽量: 公共汽车一直不来，我们 …… 走路去吧。/ 我会 …… 早点儿到。

315. Choose 白 or 曾经: 商店关门了，我们 …… 跑了一趟。/ 他 …… 在北京住过三年。

316. Which sentence is a warning?

- A. 你再不走就迟到了。

- B. 你再也不走了。
- C. 你再三走了。

317. Say "I finally bought the ticket, with great difficulty."

318. Find and fix the problem. A classmate thinks 我白跑了一趟 means the trip was free. What does it mean?

319. Use it yourself. Describe a trip that was for nothing, and warn a friend that if they don't leave now they will be late.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 毕竟 (after all)

1. 毕竟

毕竟 reminds the listener of a reason.

2. C. ……，给他一点时间。

Being a beginner is a reason to be patient.

3. B. 毕竟他是新手。

毕竟 goes before the predicate or at the start of the clause.

4. False.

It presents a reason the speaker considers obvious; the listener can still question it.

5. 这毕竟是他的决定，我们应该尊重。

毕竟 + reason, then the advice.

6. 毕竟这是他第一次。

毕竟 can open the clause.

■ 2. 反正 (anyway / in any case)

7. 反正

反正 holds one point fixed whatever the choice.

8. C. 反正我信。

不管 ……，反正 ……: the point holds regardless.

9. D. gives a reason that makes the suggestion fine

反正 + fact: since that's the case anyway.

10. False.

It can hold a fact fixed too: 反正现在还不知道.

11. 反正现在还不知道，等通知吧。

反正 + fact, then a suggestion.

12. 不管你怎么说，反正我要去。

不管 ……，反正 + fixed point.

■ 3. 干脆 (just / simply / might as well)

13. 干脆

干脆 proposes a direct way out.

14. C. a decisive, clear manner

After 得, 干脆 means decisive.

15. D. 打车太贵，干脆走路去吧。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

干脆 + action + 吧: just do this instead.

16. False.

It means she simply stopped answering.

17. 干脆我们自己做吧。

干脆 + suggestion + 吧.

18. 她干脆不说话了。

干脆 before the action.

■ 4. 简直: strong evaluation and comparison

19. 简直

简直 strengthens the speaker's evaluation.

20. D. the room is extremely cold

简直像 …… 一样 is figurative.

21. B. 我简直不敢相信!

简直 goes with strong descriptions.

22. True.

简直太糟了 is criticism; 简直太棒了 praise.

23. 这简直太棒了!

简直 + 太 …… 了.

24. 我简直不敢相信自己的眼睛。

简直 before the description.

■ 5. Advanced 都 (already / even)

25. 都

都 + time + 了: a point already reached.

26. D. even

After a striking example, 都 means "even".

27. B. 我们都来了。

都 "all" goes after the group and before the verb.

28. False.

It means "already": the food has already gone cold.

29. 这么简单的题他都不会做。

"Even" 都 comes before the negative: 都不会.

30. 这么简单的题都不会做。

The striking example comes first, then 都 + 不.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 6. Advanced 还 ... 呢

31. 还

还 + predicate + 呢: a state still continues.

32. D. mockery of someone who claims to be an expert

还 + role + 呢 challenges a claimed role.

33. B. 时间还早呢，别着急。

还 + predicate + 呢: there is still time.

34. False.

It is sharp criticism: a teacher should know the character.

35. 外面还在下雨呢。

还 before the predicate, 呢 at the end.

36. 他还没回来呢。

还没 + verb + 呢: not yet.

■ 7. 未必 / 不见得 (not necessarily)

37. 未必

未必 + adjective = not necessarily.

38. 他不见得知道这件事。

不见得 goes before the verb.

39. B. Cheap things aren't necessarily bad.

未必不好 = not necessarily bad; it may be good after all.

40. False.

未必来 leaves it open (he may not come); 一定不来 is sure he won't.

41. C. 不见得。

不见得 (or 未必) can stand alone as a reply.

42. Model answer: 学习时间最长的人未必成绩最好。方法不对的话，学得多也不见得有用。

Check your answer:

- I used 未必 or 不见得 before a verb or adjective.
- My answer leaves the question open rather than saying a flat "no".
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 8. 恨不得 (wish one could / itching to)

43. 恨不得

恨不得 + a verb phrase, often with 马上.

44. 我恨不得一天有四十八个小时。

恨不得 + a wish that can't really come true.

45. C. 我恨不得马上喝一杯咖啡。

恨不得 needs an action (喝), and it is not negated.

46. C. 舍不得

舍不得 = can't bear to part with.

47. False.

恨不得 shows a very strong wish, not hate.

48. Model answer: 会开得太长了，我恨不得马上回家看比赛。

Check your answer:

- 恨不得 is followed by an action.
- The wish sounds strong (马上 / 立刻 helps).
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 9. 仿佛 (as if)

49. 仿佛

仿佛 paints a picture that isn't really true.

50. 他睡得很香，仿佛什么都没发生过一样。

仿佛 … 一样 closes the picture.

51. A. 他好像不在家。

For a plain guess in speech, 好像.

52. B. 似的

仿佛 … 似的 / 一样 = as if ….

53. True.

In everyday speech 好像 is more common.

54. Model answer: 早上的湖面很安静，仿佛一面大镜子。站在山上往下看，城市仿佛变成了玩具一样。

Check your answer:

- 仿佛 compares the scene with a picture.
- I closed one picture with 一样 or 似的.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 10. 相当 (quite) and 相当于 (equal to)

55. 相当

相当 + adjective = quite.

56. A. 这家饭馆相当好。

Don't add 很 after 相当.

57. A. 他比我高得多。

相当 doesnt go before the adjective after 比; say 高得多.

58. 一公里相当于两里。

A 相当于 B = A equals B.

59. C. 比较 → 相当 → 非常

比较 (fairly) → 相当 (quite) → 非常 (very).

60. Model answer: 我们学校相当大，走一圈要二十分钟。这里的一节课相当于以前学校的两节课。

Check your answer:

- 相当 comes before an adjective, without 很.
- 相当于 compares two amounts.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 11. 的确 vs 确实 and 真的 (indeed)

61. 的确

Confirming what was said – 的确.

62. A. dí

的确 = dí què.

63. 这个办法的确好，但是太花时间了。

的确 accepts the point; 但是 adds the problem.

64. A. 真的吗?

真的吗 is the everyday question; 的确 is mostly used to confirm (的确如此吗? is a formal question).

65. True.

消息确实 = the news is reliable.

66. Model answer: 网课的确很方便，在家就能上课。但是一直看电脑，眼睛很容易累，而且很难集中注意力。

Check your answer:

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- 的确 confirms the classmate's point.
- 但是 adds a different point.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 12. 更加 vs 更 (even more)

67. 更加

Even more – 更加 (or 更).

68. B. 现在比以前更加重要。

A 比 sentence takes 更 / 更加, not 很.

69. A. 天气越来越冷了。

A change over time – 越来越.

70. 听了老师的话，他学习更加努力了。

更加 + two-character word.

71. True.

更好 is the usual form.

72. Model answer: 我现在说中文比去年更流利了。(报告：经过一年的学习，我的听说能力进一步提高，对中国文化也更加了解了。)

Check your answer:

- 更加 is before a two-character word.
- I didn't use 很 in a 比 sentence.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 13. 绝对 (absolutely, definitely)

73. 绝对

A 100% promise – 绝对.

74. A. 他可能不在家。

For a guess, 可能; 绝对 leaves no room for doubt.

75. A. 你一定要来!

一定要 is the usual form for strong advice.

76. 这家的饺子绝对好吃!

绝对 + adjective.

77. True.

绝对的 + noun = absolute ….

78. Model answer: 学校旁边那家面馆绝对好吃，你一定要去试试。不过周末人可能比较多，最好早点儿去。

Check your answer:

- 绝对 is for something I'm completely sure of.
- 可能 is for a guess.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 14. 唯一 vs 只有 (the only)

79. 唯一

The only – 唯一的.

80. B. 我只有一个哥哥。

Limiting a number – 只有.

81. A. 他是我唯一的哥哥。

Describing the noun – 唯一的.

82. 我唯一担心的是天气。

唯一 + verb + 的是 ….

83. True.

唯一的办法, 唯一的机会.

84. Model answer: 我是我们家唯一会开车的人。这次旅行，我唯一担心的是路上会不会堵车。

Check your answer:

- 唯一 describes a noun or starts "the only thing … is".
- I didn't use 唯一 to limit a number.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 15. 相对 vs 比较 (relatively)

85. 相对

Relatively – 相对 (everyday 比较).

86. B. Houses here are cheaper than in other places.

相对 compares; it isn't "very".

87. 相对来说，坐地铁比打车方便。

相对来说 starts the comparison.

88. A. 绝对

相对 (relative) vs 绝对 (absolute).

89. True.

这个季节游客相对少.

90. Model answer: 在图书馆学习相对安静，容易集中注意力。相对来说，在家学习更方便，但是也更容易被手机打扰。

Check your answer:

- 相对 softens the comparison.
- Both sides get a point.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 16. 一致 (unanimously; consistent)

91. 一致

All together, no different opinion – 一致.

92. A. 我们一致认为这个办法好。

一致 needs a group.

93. A. What he says doesn't match what he does.

A 和 B 不一致 = A doesn't match B.

94. 经过讨论，我们一致决定周六出发。

Group + 一致 + 决定.

95. True.

Before fourth-tone 致, 一 becomes yí.

96. Model answer: 经过讨论，大家一致同意在学校举办一次读书节。不过，关于时间，大家的意见还不太一致。

Check your answer:

- 一致 + verb has a group as subject.
- 不一致 compares views.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 17. 彻底 vs 完全 (thoroughly, completely)

97. 彻底

Once and for all – 彻底.

98. B. 我完全同意。

A state (agreeing) – 完全.

99. A. 全班都来了。

All, whole – 全.

100. 大扫除要做得彻底一点儿。

Verb + 得 + 彻底.

101. True.

完全 + 不 = not at all.

102. Model answer: 去年我彻底改变了熬夜的习惯，现在每天十一点前睡觉。我完全同意“ 早睡早起身体好 ”这句话。

Check your answer:

- 彻底 goes with a change or an ending.
- 完全 goes with a state.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 18. 过分 vs 太 and 过于 (going too far)

103. 过分

Going too far – 过分.

104. A. 今天天气太热了。

Neutral “too” – 太.

105. B. 考试的时候不要过分紧张。

过分 + a feeling = overly.

106. 他说的话有点儿过分。

有点儿 + 过分.

107. True.

过于自信 – overconfident.

108. Model answer: 我的室友每天晚上一点还在打游戏，声音很大，真是太过分了。不过我也不想过分生气，明天想好好跟他谈谈。

Check your answer:

- 过分 judges behaviour or a feeling.
- Neutral “too” uses 太.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 19. 说不定 vs 也许 and 恐怕 (maybe, who knows)

109. 说不定

Maybe, who knows – 说不定.

110. B. 恐怕来不及了。

A worried guess – 恐怕.

111. A. It's not certain when he'll be back.

还说不定 = not certain yet.

112. 别等了，他说不定已经进去了。

说不定 before the guess.

113. True.

说不定 can open a hopeful possibility.

114. Model answer: 别难过，说不定下学期还有机会呢！不过这学期恐怕没有空位了，我们先做点儿别的吧。

Check your answer:

- 说不定 opens a hopeful possibility.
- 恐怕 gives a worried guess.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 20. 尽量 + Verb (as much as possible)

115. 尽量

尽量 + action: as much as you can.

116. C. 尽量别在晚上喝咖啡。

尽量 + 别 + verb: avoid it as far as you can.

117. D. 我一定来。

尽量 offers effort; 一定 promises the result.

118. False.

It promises effort within practical limits.

119. 尽量少用手机。

尽量 + 少 + verb.

120. 上课时尽量用汉语交流。

尽量 before the action.

■ 21. 尽管 + Verb (feel free to)

121. 尽管

尽管 + action: go ahead, don't hesitate.

122. C. although

尽管 opening a clause with 还是 later = although.

123. B. 他还是把工作做完了。

尽管 A，还是 B: B happens despite A.

124. False.

Before an action it means "feel free to": rest assured.

125. 想吃什么尽管点。

尽管 + verb invites the listener.

126. 尽管很晚了，他还是给我打了电话。

尽管 + fact, 还是 + result.

■ 22. 互相 + Verb (each other)

127. 互相

互相 + verb: both are doers and receivers.

128. A. 我们互相帮助。

互相 goes before the verb and takes no other object.

129. D. they exchanged a glance

A mutual action can be one event.

130. False.

他帮助我 is one-way; 互相 is both ways.

131. 我们要互相学习。

互相 before the verb.

132. 我跟他互相帮助。

我跟他 names both participants.

■ 23. 顺便 (while you're at it / by the way)

133. 顺便

顺便 adds an action to an existing trip.

134. B. 我去图书馆，顺便还书。

The main purpose comes first, the extra action after 顺便.

135. A. raises a side question: by the way

In conversation, 顺便 adds a side topic.

136. False.

It means it fits into something you are already doing.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

137. 我去看朋友，顺便把书还给她了。
Main trip, then 顺便 + extra action.
138. 我去上班，顺便寄这封信。
顺便 + extra action.

■ 24. 好 (不) 容易 (with great difficulty)

139. 好不容易 / 好容易
Before an achieved result, both mean “with great difficulty”.
140. D. I found him with great difficulty
Before an achieved result with 才, 好容易 = 好不容易.
141. B. very easy
As a plain description, 好容易 means “very easy”.
142. False.
It gives no count, only the difficulty.
143. 他好不容易找到了一份工作。
好不容易 + achieved result.
144. 我们好不容易才到家。
好不容易 + 才 + result.

■ 25. 白 + Verb (in vain / for nothing)

145. 白
白 + verb: the action failed in its purpose.
146. A. the trip was worth it
没白 + verb: not in vain.
147. B. 他没来，我们白等了。
白 also means “white”, “free” and “daytime”.
148. True.
白 has several meanings; the context decides.
149. 我们白等了一个小时。
白 + verb + duration.
150. 这些努力都白费了。
白费 = wasted.

■ 26. 连忙 vs 赶紧 (hurriedly / hurry up)

151. 连忙
A quick reaction in a story – 连忙.
152. A. 你赶紧走吧。

连忙 can't give an order; use 赶紧.

153. 快下雨了，赶紧回家吧！

赶紧 + verb gives advice or an order.

154. A. 我马上就来。

马上 works for plans and promises; 连忙 only tells what happened.

155. False.

连忙 can't follow 得 / 要 / 会. Say 我们得赶紧出发.

156. Model answer: 我闻到厨房里有烟，连忙跑过去关了火。然后我对弟弟说："赶紧把窗户打开！"

Check your answer:

- 连忙 tells what someone did quickly.
- 赶紧 gives an order.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 27. 特意 vs 顺便 and 故意 (specially / while you're at it / on purpose)

157. 特意

Just for this purpose – 特意.

158. B. 顺便

While doing something else – 顺便.

159. A. 故意

A bad action on purpose – 故意.

160. True.

It is the usual apology for an accident.

161. 我特意为你做了这个菜。

特意 comes before 为 + person and the verb.

162. Model answer: 谢谢你特意从北京来给我过生日。我去车站接你的时候，顺便买了一个蛋糕。

Check your answer:

- 特意 shows the trip was just for this.
- 顺便 adds a side action.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 28. 分别 (respectively, separately)

163. 分别

Two people, two places, in order – 分别.

164. B. Shanghai

The orders match – 我 → 北京, 妹妹 → 上海.

165. A. 我们分别了十年。

分别 (verb) = to part; 区别 is a difference.

166. 老师分别和每个学生谈了话。

分别 before the verb phrase.

167. True.

区别 = a difference.

168. Model answer: 我的两个哥哥分别在医院和银行工作。我的好朋友小张和小王分别学经济和法律。

Check your answer:

- The two lists are in the same order.
- There are at least two people before 分别.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 29. 悄悄 vs 安静, 偷偷 and 轻轻 (quietly)

169. 悄悄

Quietly, so nobody notices – 悄悄.

170. B. 教室里很安静。

安静 describes a place; 悄悄 goes before a verb.

171. A. 轻轻地关上门。

轻轻 = gently; 偷偷 = sneakily.

172. 我们悄悄准备了一个生日晚会。

悄悄 + verb.

173. True.

他偷偷地玩手机 – he sneakily played on his phone.

174. Model answer: 朋友生日那天，我们悄悄地把教室布置好了。他进来的时候，大家都很安静，然后一起喊：“ 生日快乐！”

Check your answer:

- 悄悄 is before a verb.
- 安静 or 轻轻 is used in the right way.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 30. 单独 vs 独自 (alone, separately)

175. 单独

One-to-one – 单独.

176. A. 这道题我们单独讲。

Treating a thing separately – 单独. (独自讲 would mean "explain it alone".)

177. B. 他独自一个人去了西藏。

A person by himself – 独自 (一个人).

178. 这个箱子比较重，请单独放。

单独 + verb.

179. True.

他独自一个人去了西藏 – no one went with him.

180. Model answer: 去年暑假我独自去了一趟成都。在饭馆里，我请服务员把辣椒单独放，这样我可以自己加。

Check your answer:

- 独自 is for me doing something alone.
- 单独 separates a thing or an arrangement.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 31. 总 (always / keep on)

181. 总 / 总是

总 (是) + predicate: a recurring pattern.

182. C. 总会好的。

总会 + outcome: it will happen sooner or later.

183. D. 周末他总睡到中午。

Time frame first, then subject, then 总 before the verb.

184. False.

It can praise too: 她总帮助别人.

185. 你怎么总玩手机?

怎么 + 总 turns a habit into a complaint.

186. 她总帮助别人。

Subject + 总 + verb phrase.

■ 32. 曾经 + Verb + 过 (once / formerly)

187. 曾经

曾经 places a state in the past.

188. A. 他曾经当过老师。

曾经 + verb + 过 + object.

189. B. she was shy before (probably not now)

曾经 places the state in the past.

190. False.

It means "once, at one time"; for an exact count use 一次.

191. 他曾经当过医生。

曾经 + 当过.

192. 我们曾经爬过这座山。

曾经 + verb + 过.

■ 33. 再三 + Verb (over and over)

193. 再三

再三 + verb: repeated with earnest attention.

194. A. I thought it over many times and decided to go

再三 gives no exact count.

195. D. 再三高

再三 goes with verbs of saying, thinking and asking.

196. False.

Repetition doesn't guarantee the result: 可是我还是不明白.

197. 他再三感谢我们。/ 他再三向我们表示感谢。

再三 + 感谢.

198. 他再三强调这一点。

再三 before the verb.

■ 34. Verb + 了 + 又 + Verb (again and again)

199. 又

verb + 了 + 又 + same verb: repeated action.

200. C. 看了又看

The same verb repeats around 了又.

201. B. No

还是拒绝了: he still refused.

202. False.

It stresses repetition with no exact count.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

203. 她查了又查，终于发现了错误。
Repeated action, then the result.
204. 他想了又想。
Verb + 了 + 又 + verb.

■ 35. 再也 + 不 / 没 + ... 了 (never again)

205. 再也
再也不 …… 了: never again (an intention).
206. D. we haven't met since graduation
再也没 + verb + 过: no repeat in that period.
207. A. 我再也找不到那本书了。
再也 + potential negative: inability now.
208. True.
再也不 …… 了 states a strong intention.
209. 我再也没见过他。
For past experience, use 没 with 过.
210. 他再也没回来过。
再也没 + verb + 过.

■ 36. 始终 (all along / from start to finish)

211. 始终
始终没 = never, from start to finish.
212. 她始终相信自己能成功。
Subject + 始终 + verb.
213. B. 一直
Only 一直 can mean "straight on".
214. B. 明天我一直在家。
With a set future time span, use 一直. 始终 is not used that way.
215. True.
始终不 / 始终没 = never, from start to finish.
216. Model answer: 我们讨论了两个小时，他始终不同意。他始终认为自己的办法最好。
Check your answer:

- Each 始终 comes after the subject and before the verb.
- The sentences look back over a finished period.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 37. 仍然 (still)

217. 仍然

After time passing, 仍然 says the situation stayed the same.

218. 问题仍然没有解决。

仍然 comes before the negative and the verb.

219. B. 我还要一杯。

还 can mean "more"; 仍然 only means "still".

220. C. 仍然

虽然 …，… 仍然 … = although …, still ….

221. True.

依然 is a little more literary, but the meaning is the same.

222. Model answer: 虽然我的家乡变化很大，但是那条老街仍然在那里。很多老人仍然每天早上在那儿喝茶。

Check your answer:

- The first part shows time passing or a change.
- 仍然 comes after the subject and before the verb.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 38. 逐渐 vs 逐步 (gradually / step by step)

223. 逐渐

A natural, slow change – 逐渐 (or 渐渐).

224. 我们要逐步解决这些问题。

逐步 goes before the verb.

225. A. 天逐渐黑了。

Nobody plans the dark, so 逐渐.

226. B. 逐步

Planned stages – 逐步.

227. True.

渐渐地，雨停了 = Little by little, the rain stopped.

228. Model answer: 刚开始我听不懂老师说的话，后来逐渐听懂了。现在我打算逐步提高自己的写作水平。

Check your answer:

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- 逐渐 describes a slow, natural change.
- 逐步 describes something done in planned stages.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 39. 随时 (at any time)

229. 随时

随时 + verb = at any time.

230. 天这么黑，随时可能下雨。

随时可能 = could … at any moment.

231. A. 他总是迟到。

总是 = always. 随时 = at any time (whenever needed).

232. A. 及时

及时 = in time, before it was too late.

233. True.

用手机可以随时随地学习.

234. Model answer: 你有什么不懂的，可以随时问我。周末欢迎你随时来我家玩儿。

Check your answer:

- 随时 comes before the verb.
- My sentences are offers, not “always”.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 40. 从此 and 至今 (from then on / to this day)

235. 从此

An event, then 从此 + the new situation.

236. 至今

至今 looks back from today.

237. A. 我在成都吃了一次火锅，从此就喜欢上了。

从此 needs an event before it.

238. C. 从来

从来不 = never, as a general habit.

239. 他十年前离开了家乡，至今没有回去过。

至今 + 没 (有) … 过 = hasn’t … up to now.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

240. Model answer: 去年我看了一部关于环保的电影，从此不再用塑料袋了。这个习惯我至今还保持着。

Check your answer:

- 从此 follows the event that changed things.
- 至今 describes the situation today.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 41. 立刻 and 立即 vs 马上 (at once / soon)

241. 立刻

An action with no delay – 立刻 (or 立即, 马上).

242. B. 马上就要考试了。

For "soon", use 马上; 立刻 means this very moment.

243. B. 立即

立即 = immediately, formal.

244. 马上就要放假了。

马上就要 … 了 = soon.

245. True.

You see 立即 in notices and news.

246. Model answer: 听到警报声，请大家立即离开教室，从楼梯下楼。马上就要进行消防演习了，请认真准备。

Check your answer:

- 立即 / 立刻 is used for an action with no delay.
- 马上 is used for "soon".
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 42. 偶然 vs 偶尔 (by chance / now and then)

247. 偶然

Unplanned – 偶然.

248. B. 偶尔

How often – 偶尔.

249. A. 一个偶然的机会

A chance opportunity – 偶然的机会. (偶尔的 would mean "occasional".)

250. A. 必然

必然 = bound to happen, the opposite of 偶然.

251. True.

It happened for a reason.

252. Model answer: 去年我偶然发现了学校附近的一家咖啡馆。现在我周末偶尔去那儿看书。

Check your answer:

- 偶然 = by chance, 偶尔 = now and then.
- Both come before the verb.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 43. 事先 vs 提前 (beforehand / ahead of time)

253. 事先

Before the event – 事先 (提前 also works here).

254. A. 我们提前十分钟到了。

With an amount of time, 提前.

255. B. 考试提前了。

提前 can be a verb; 事先 can't.

256. 会议提前到星期三了。

提前到 + new time.

257. True.

事先准备, 事先告诉, 事先打电话.

258. Model answer: 请大家事先准备好水和吃的。出发那天请提前十五分钟到学校门口。

Check your answer:

- 事先 comes before a verb of preparing or telling.
- 提前 takes an amount of time.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 44. 纷纷 (one after another, many)

259. 纷纷

Many people doing the same thing one after another – 纷纷.

260. A. 大家纷纷举手。

纷纷 needs many doers.

261. B. 请大家积极发言。

纷纷 describes what a crowd does; it sounds wrong in a request.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

262. 秋天到了，树叶纷纷落下。

Many things + 纷纷 + verb.

263. True.

陆续 = one after another over a period of time.

264. Model answer: 学校宣布下周举办运动会。消息一出，同学们纷纷报名参加。

Check your answer:

- 纷纷 has many doers before it.
- It describes a reaction, not an order.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 45. 反复 vs 重复 (again and again / to repeat)

265. 反复

Again and again – 反复.

266. B. 请你再重复一遍。

重复 is the verb "to repeat".

267. B. 这个问题我们反复讨论了，还是没有结果。

反复 + verb = again and again; 重复了讨论 is not natural.

268. 这篇文章我反复读了三遍才读懂。

反复 + verb, then 才 = not until.

269. True.

他一再提醒我 – he kept reminding me.

270. Model answer: 为了准备口语考试，我把每个话题都反复练习了好几遍。我还请朋友听我说，说错了就重复一遍。

Check your answer:

- 反复 goes before a verb; 重复 is the verb.
- My sentences sound natural.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 46. 从前 vs 以前 and 过去 (long ago)

271. 从前

The classic story opening – 从前.

272. B. 睡觉以前要刷牙。

Event + 以前; 从前 can't follow an event.

273. A. 明天出发以前给我打电话。

Event + 以前 can point to the future; 从前 is only the past.

274. 从前这里是一片农田，现在成了大城市。

从前 … 现在 … contrasts the past and now.

275. True.

过去的事 = things in the past.

276. Model answer: 从前我们学校只有一栋楼，学生也不多。现在学校变大了，有了新的图书馆和体育馆。

Check your answer:

- 从前 starts the past part; 现在 starts the present part.
- The change is clear.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 47. 最初 vs 当初 (at first / back then)

277. 最初

At first – 最初, then 后来.

278. A. 早知道这样，当初就不该来。

Looking back at a decision with regret – 当初.

279. 我最初的想法是学医。

最初的 + noun.

280. A. How the company changed from the start to now

最初 … 现在 … shows a change.

281. True.

一开始我听不懂 – at first I couldn't understand.

282. Model answer: 最初我学吉他只是觉得好玩，每天练十分钟。后来越来越喜欢，现在每天都要练一个小时。

Check your answer:

- 最初 marks the start; 后来 / 现在 shows the change.
- The change is clear.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 48. 差点没: near misses and context

283. B. Yes

幸好司机等了我 settles it: they caught it.

284. B. No

可是车开走了: they nearly caught it but missed it.

285. 差点

差点 + unwanted event: it almost happened.

286. True.

For bad events the two forms usually mean the same; the next clause confirms it.

287. 我差点忘了你的生日。

差点 + 忘了.

288. 我差点没赶上火车。

差点没 + verb, here meaning nearly missed (but caught it).

■ 49. 再不 ... 就 ... 了: a conditional warning

289. 再不

再不 + action，就 + consequence.

290. B. 就来不及了。

The consequence is a warning.

291. A. if it doesn't rain soon, the crops will die

The consequence is predicted, not yet real.

292. False.

It warns about a possible consequence.

293. 再不吃，饭就凉了。

再不 + verb，就 + result + 了.

294. 他再不来，我们就走了。

再不 + action，subject + 就 + consequence.

■ 50. 差很多 (differ a lot)

295. 差

A 和 B 的 + dimension + 差很多.

296. B. 60 元

$80 - 20 = 60$.

297. C. 我们俩的想法差很多。

Name the pair and the dimension, then 差很多.

298. False.

It says the gap is large, not which side is higher.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

299. 这两部手机差五百块。

差 + exact amount.

300. True.

As an adjective, 差 means poor or bad.

■ 51. 幸亏 (luckily / thanks to)

301. 不然

The second clause says what would have happened without the lucky fact.

302. 幸亏他开车送我，我才赶上了飞机。

幸亏 …，才 … = only thanks to that.

303. B. 幸亏我们早出发了，不然就迟到了。

幸亏 marks a lucky fact that stopped something bad (迟到).

304. True.

幸好 and 幸亏 swap freely.

305. A. 我很幸运，抽到了奖。

For plain good luck with no danger avoided, use 很幸运.

306. Model answer: 幸亏闹钟响了，不然我就错过考试了。

Check your answer:

- 幸亏 introduces the lucky fact.
- 不然 / 要不然 introduces what would have happened.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 52. 难免 (bound to / hard to avoid)

307. 难免

难免 + the unwelcome result.

308. 刚到一个新地方，难免会想家。

Situation, then 难免 + 会 + result.

309. B. 避免

避免 is the verb "to avoid". 难免 says something cannot be avoided.

310. True.

免不了 is the spoken twin of 难免.

311. A. 吵架是难免的。

… 是难免的 = … is unavoidable.

312. Model answer: 刚到新学校，难免会不习惯。第一次考试考得不好也是难免的，以后会好的。

Check your answer:

- The situation comes first, then 难免 + the unwelcome result.
- I used … 是难免的 once.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ Mixed practice

313. 他毕竟才十岁 (the deeper reason to keep in mind)。反正我也没事 (it makes no difference, so …).

314. 我们干脆走路去吧 (a quick, decisive choice)。我会尽量早点儿到 (as much as possible).

315. 我们白跑了一趟 (for nothing)。他曾经在北京住过三年 (once, in the past; note 过).

316. A. 再不 …… 就 …… 了: if you still don't …, then (something bad) will happen.

317. 我好不容易才买到票。好不容易 and 好容易 both mean "with great difficulty" here, and 才 usually follows.

318. 白 + verb means "for nothing": you went, but did not get what you went for. It says nothing about the cost.

319. Model answer. 图书馆今天关门，我白跑了一趟。你再不走就要迟到了。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one sentence each with 毕竟, 反正 and 干脆.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Auxiliary words

HSK 5

…… 啊，…… 啊 lists examples in a relaxed spoken way: 苹果啊，香蕉啊，我都喜欢. Each item takes 啊, and a summary with 都 often follows. Use it when chatting, not in formal writing.

... 啊，... 啊 (casual listing)

Form: A 啊，B 啊，(C 啊) (什么的)，都 + comment

- **护照啊，充电器啊，药啊，他都是临走才装进包里。** *Hùzhào a, chōngdiànqì a, yào a, tā dōu shì línzǒu cái zhuāngjìn bāo li.* – Passport, charger, medicine: he always packs them right before he leaves.
- **玩具啊，故事书啊什么的，堆得满地都是。** *Wánjù a, gùshishū a shénmede, duī de mǎndì dōu shì.* – Toys, storybooks and so on are piled all over the floor.
- **水果啊，饮料啊，纸杯啊什么的，都放在桌上了。** *Shuǐguǒ a, yǐnliào a, zhǐbēi a shénmede, dōu fàng zài zhuō shang le.* – Fruit, drinks, paper cups and so on are all on the table.
- **唱歌啊，跳舞啊，画画儿啊，她样样都会。** *Chàng gē a, tiào wǔ a, huà huàr a, tā yàngyàng dōu huì.* – Singing, dancing, drawing: she can do them all.
- **买菜啊，做饭啊，接孩子啊，每天忙得不得了。** *Mǎi cài a, zuò fàn a, jiē háizi a, měitiān máng de bùdéliǎo.* – Shopping for food, cooking, picking up the kids: every day is incredibly busy.
- **上海啊，杭州啊，苏州啊，这些地方我都去过。** *Shànghǎi a, Hángzhōu a, Sūzhōu a, zhèxiē dìfang wǒ dōu qùguo.* – Shanghai, Hangzhou, Suzhou: I've been to all these places.

How it works. 啊 after each item lists examples in a lively, spoken way, as if you were pointing at them one by one. The items are only examples, not a complete list. The list usually closes with 什么的, with a summary word (这些地方, 样样) or with 都 and a comment about all of them.

The items can be nouns (水果啊, 饮料啊) or verb phrases (买菜啊, 做饭啊). Because the speaker lists things with feeling, the comment often shows an attitude: busy, impressed, annoyed. In fast speech 啊 blends with the sound before it and may be written 呀 or 哇 (水果呀); 啊 is always correct.

Spoken, lively	Plain	Formal
苹果啊，香蕉啊什么的	苹果、香蕉和橙子	苹果、香蕉等水果
chatting with friends	a neutral description	a report or notice

Watch out

- Give at least two items; one item with 啊 is just an exclamation: *wrong:* 护照啊，他都忘了 → 护照啊，钱包啊，他都忘了.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- Use the same pattern for every item: *wrong:* 水果啊，饮料，纸杯啊 → 水果啊，饮料啊，纸杯啊.
- Not in essays or reports: write 等 instead (护照、充电器等物品).

In a passage

> 搬家真是太累了！衣服啊，书啊，锅碗瓢盆啊，什么都要装箱。我妈妈还舍不得扔东西，旧报纸啊，空瓶子啊，她都要带走。忙了整整两天，新家才终于收拾好了。

Read and notice. Find the two 啊 lists. What comment does the writer make after each one?



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Complete the list: "Fruit, drinks, paper cups and so on are all on the table." 水果啊，饮料啊，纸杯啊 ……，都放在桌上了。

2. Which suits a formal report?

- A. 发票啊，合同啊，都在这儿。
- B. 发票、合同等文件都在这儿。
- C. 发票啊合同啊等等啊。
- D. 啊发票，啊合同。

3. Build: "Toys, storybooks and so on are all over the floor."

Put in order: 玩具啊 / 什么的 / ，堆得满地都是。/ ，故事书啊

4. True or false? The 啊-list sounds more lively than a list with 、. If false, correct it.

5. Your father always packs at the last minute and stuffs everything in. Use … 啊, … 啊. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Find and fix the problem. You hear 我们聊聊电影啊、音乐啊. A classmate thinks 啊 asks which film. Correct the reading.

7. Use it yourself. Make a casual spoken list of two hobbies, then write the same list for a school notice.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 什么的

The 啊-list often ends with 什么的.

2. B. 发票、合同等文件都在这儿。

Formal lists use 、and 等.

3. 玩具啊，故事书啊什么的，堆得满地都是。

A 啊，B 啊什么的 + comment.

4. True.

It sounds as if the speaker is pointing at each item.

5. Model answer: 护照啊，充电器啊，药啊，他都是临走才装进包里。

Check your answer:

- 啊 here lists examples; in a formal text use 、and 等: 发票、合同等 – "Invoices, contracts, and so on."
- In fast speech 啊 blends with the word before it and may be written 呀 or 哇 (水果呀); 啊 is always correct.

■ Mixed practice

6. Here 啊 marks each item in a casual list: "films, music, things like that". It is not a question.

7. Model answer. 周末我喜欢打球啊，看电影啊。(Notice:) 本周活动包括打球、看电影等。

Review later. Tomorrow, list three foods with 啊 when chatting with a partner.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Conjunctions

HSK 5

Linking words for longer speech and writing. 要不 …… 吧 suggests another plan, and 否则 / 不然 say what happens if advice is not followed. The essay connectors turn an argument (然而), add a point (此外), state a result (因而, 从而) and draw a conclusion from facts (可见). They usually start the second clause or a new sentence.

At a glance

Suggestions and warnings

- **1.** 要不 … 吧 – how about …: 这儿人太多了，要不我们去对面那家吧。
- **2.** 否则 / 不然 – otherwise: 快走吧，否则我们会迟到的。

Essay connectors

- **3.** 然而 – however – formal: 他学了三年汉语。
- **4.** 此外 – in addition: 这家酒店离地铁站很近，房间也很干净。
- **5.** 因而 / 从而 – therefore / thereby: 他每天和中国朋友聊天，从而提高了口语水平。
- **6.** 可见 – this shows / clearly: 他每天都学到半夜，可见他有多努力。

1. 要不 ... 吧 (how about ...)

Form: (problem，) 要不 + suggestion + 吧

- **这儿人太多了，要不我们去对面那家吧。** *Zhèr rén tài duō le, yàobù wǒmen qù duìmiàn nà jiā ba.* – It's too crowded here; how about the place across the road?
- **要不我们打车吧。** *Yàobù wǒmen dǎchē ba.* – How about we take a taxi?
- **可能下雨，要不我们把野餐改到室内吧。** *Kěnéng xià yǔ, yàobù wǒmen bǎ yěcān gǎi dào shìnèi ba.* – It might rain; how about moving the picnic indoors?
- **你太累了，要不先休息一下吧。** *Nǐ tài lèi le, yàobù xiān xiūxi yíxià ba.* – You're exhausted; why not rest for a bit first?
- **电话里说不清楚，要不我们见面谈吧。** *Diànhuà li shuō bu qīngchu, yàobù wǒmen jiànmiàn tán ba.* – It's hard to explain on the phone; how about we talk in person?
- **A：周六我有事。B：那要不改到周日吧？** *A: Zhōuliù wǒ yǒu shì. B: Nà yàobù gǎi dào zhōurì ba?* – A: I'm busy on Saturday. B: Then how about Sunday?

How it works. 要不 *yàobù* at the start of a clause offers another option, "how about …, why don't we …". It usually comes right after a reason the first plan won't work (人太多了, 可能下雨, 我有事), so the order is: problem, then 要不 + new idea. 吧 at the end keeps it a friendly suggestion rather than an order, and a question mark is fine too.

那 often comes before it in a reply (那要不 …… 吧). The subject can be 我们, 你, or

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

left out when it is obvious.

Expression	Meaning	Example
要不 …… 吧	how about (a new idea)	要不我们坐地铁吧?
还是 …… 吧	had better (after weighing options)	想了想，还是坐地铁吧。
要不然	otherwise	快走，要不然就迟到了。
要不是	if it weren't for	要不是你帮我，我就完了。

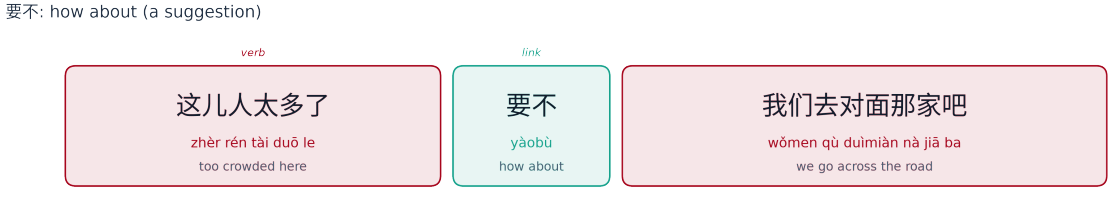
Watch out

- Without 吧 the suggestion can sound abrupt: *wrong:* 要不我们打车 → 要不我们打车吧.
- In fast speech 要不 can also mean "otherwise" (快走，要不就迟到了). It is a suggestion only when a new plan follows, usually with 吧.
- Do not confuse it with 要不是 ("if it weren't for"), which talks about the past.

In a passage

小王：电影票卖完了，怎么办?
小李：要不我们看晚一点儿的那场吧?
小王：太晚了，我明天还要上班。
小李：那要不我们改天再来吧，今天先去吃饭。
小王：好主意!

Read and notice. What problem comes before each 要不? Which suggestion does 小王 accept?



2. 否则 / 不然 (otherwise)

Form: advice / condition，否则 / 不然 / 要不然 + (会 / 就) result

- **快走吧，否则我们会迟到的。** *Kuài zǒu ba, fǒuzé wǒmen huì chídào de.* – Let's hurry, otherwise we'll be late.
- **带上伞，不然会淋湿的。** – Take an umbrella, or you'll get wet.
- **幸亏你来了，不然我就走了。** – Luckily you came, otherwise I'd have left.

How it works. The first clause gives advice or something that must happen. 否则 ("otherwise, if not") starts the second clause and says what follows if it doesn't. 否则 is formal; 不然 and 要不然 are spoken.

否则	不然 / 要不然	要不 … 吧
otherwise (formal)	otherwise (spoken)	how about … (a suggestion)

Watch out

- *wrong:* 如果你早点儿睡，否则 … → 你得早点儿睡，否则 ….
- 否则 comes before the subject of the second clause.



3. 然而 (however – formal)

Form: statement。然而，+ contrasting statement

- **他学了三年汉语。然而，他还是不敢开口说。** *Tā xuéle sān nián Hànyǔ. Rán'ér, tā háishi bù gǎn kāikǒu shuō.* – He has studied Chinese for three years. However, he still doesn't dare to speak.
- **然而，事情并没有这么简单。** – However, things were not that simple.
- **虽然大家都很努力，然而结果并不理想。** – Although everyone worked hard, the result was not ideal.

How it works. 然而 turns to a contrast in formal writing. It usually starts the second sentence or a new paragraph and is followed by a comma.

然而	但是 / 可是	然后
however (formal writing)	but (speech and writing)	then, next (time order)

Watch out

- *wrong:* 我先吃饭，然而去学校 → 我先吃饭，然后去学校.
- In conversation, use 但是 / 可是, not 然而.



4. 此外 (in addition)

Form: point(s)。此外，+ one more point · 除此之外，…

- **这家酒店离地铁站很近，房间也很干净。此外，早餐是免费的。** *Cǐwài, zǎocān shì miǎnfèi de.* – This hotel is close to the metro and the rooms are clean. In addition, breakfast is free.
- **会议九点开始。此外，请大家带上笔记本电脑。** – The meeting starts at nine. Also, please bring your laptops.
- **除此之外，这里的服务也很好。** – Besides this, the service here is good too.

How it works. 此外 starts a new sentence and adds one more point. It is common in formal writing, notices and reports. 除此之外 means the same.

此外，…	另外一个问题	…，而且 …
in addition (new sentence, formal)	another problem (另外 before a noun)	and also (inside one sentence)

Watch out

- *wrong:* 此外一个问题 → 另外一个问题.
- To join two points inside one sentence, use 而且.



5. 因而 / 从而 (therefore / thereby)

Form: action / method，从而 + verb · cause，因而 + result

- **他每天和中国朋友聊天，从而提高了口语水平。** *Tā měi tiān hé Zhōngguó péngyou liáotiān, cóng'ér tígāole kǒuyǔ shuǐpíng.* – He chatted with Chinese friends every day, and so improved his speaking.
- **我们改进了方法，从而节约了时间。** – We improved our method, and so saved time.
- **雨下得太大，因而比赛取消了。** – The rain was too heavy, so the match was cancelled.

How it works. Both are formal. 从而 says what an action achieved; the subject stays the same, so 从而 is followed by a verb. 因而 is a formal 所以: a cause, then a result, which may have a new subject.

从而	因而 / 因此	所以
by doing this, achieved …	therefore (formal)	so (pairs with 因为)

Watch out

- *wrong:* 雨太大，从而比赛取消了 → 雨太大，因而比赛取消了 (rain is not an action someone took).
- *wrong:* 因为下雨，从而 … → 因为下雨，所以 ….

从而: method → result · 因而: cause → result



6. 可见 (this shows / clearly)

Form: evidence，可见 + conclusion · 由此可见，+ conclusion

- **他每天都学到半夜，可见他有多努力。** *Tā měi tiān dōu xué dào bànyè, kějiàn tā yǒu duō nǔlì.* – He studies until midnight every day, which shows how hard he works.
- **这家店每天都排长队，可见东西很好吃。** – There's a long queue at this shop every day, so the food must be good.
- **由此可见，好习惯对学习非常重要。** – From this we can see that good habits are very important for study.

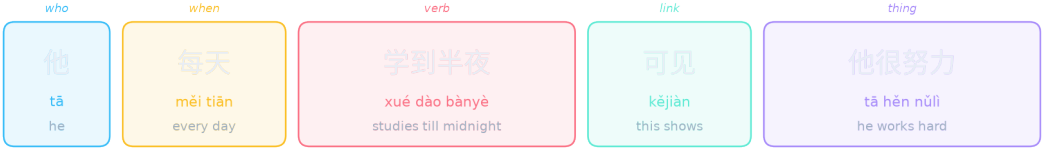
How it works. 可见 draws a conclusion from facts you have just given. 由此可见 sums up the examples in an essay paragraph.

看来要下雨了	他三次都没来，可见他不想参加
it seems (a guess)	this shows (a conclusion from facts)

Watch out

- The facts come first, then 可见.
- 可见 does not take an object: *wrong:* 我可见他 → 我看见他.

Evidence，可见 + conclusion



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 要不 ... 吧 (how about ...)

1. Suggest: "How about we take a taxi?" …… 我们打车吧。

2. What does 要不是你帮我，我就完了 mean?

- A. I didn't need your help.
- B. If you hadn't helped me, I'd have been done for.
- C. Help me, or else.
- D. How about you help me?

3. Build: "It might rain; how about moving the picnic indoors?"

Put in order: 我们把野餐 / 改到室内吧。/ 可能下雨 / ，要不

4. True or false? 要不然 means "otherwise". If false, correct it.

5. You and a friend walk into a café, and every table is taken. Use 要不 … 吧. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 否则 / 不然 (otherwise)

6. Complete: "Wear more clothes, otherwise you'll catch a cold." 你得多穿点儿，…… 会感冒的。

7. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 你得早点儿睡，否则明天起不来。
- B. 你得早点儿睡，明天否则起不来。
- C. 如果你早点儿睡，否则明天起不来。

8. Build: "Take an umbrella, or you'll get wet."

Put in order: 会 / 带上伞，/ 不然 / 淋湿的。

9. "How about taking a taxi?" Which word makes this suggestion? _____ 我们打车吧?

- A. 否则
- B. 要不

10. True or false? 不然 can look back at the past, as in 幸亏你来了，不然我就走了. If false, correct it.

11. Your younger brother is playing games the night before an exam. Give him two pieces of advice, each with what will happen otherwise (否则 / 不然). Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 然而 (however – formal)

12. Complete: “He has studied for three years. However, he still doesn’t dare to speak.” 他学了三年。……，他还是不敢说。

13. “I’ll eat first, then go to school.” Which word fits? 我先吃饭，_____ 去学校。

- A. 然后
- B. 而且
- C. 然而

14. Build: “However, things were not that simple.”

Put in order: 然而， / 并没有 / 这么简单。/ 事情

15. You are chatting with a friend: “This shirt is nice, but too expensive.” Which sounds most natural?

- A. 这件衣服很好看，然而太贵了。
- B. 这件衣服很好看，可是太贵了。

16. True or false? 然而 can open a new paragraph in an essay. If false, correct it.

17. Write two sentences for an essay about smartphones: first a good point, then a problem introduced with 然而. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 4. 此外 (in addition)

18. Complete: “The rooms are clean. In addition, breakfast is free.” 房间很干净。……，早餐是免费的。

19. “There is another problem.” Which is right? 还有 _____。

- A. 另外一个问题
- B. 此外一个问题

20. Build: “Also, please bring your laptops.”

Put in order: 请大家 / 此外， / 带上 / 笔记本电脑。

21. “The room is clean, and cheap too.” Which word joins the two points inside one sentence? 房间很干净，_____ 很便宜。

- A. 此外
- B. 而且

22. True or false? 除此之外 means the same as 此外. If false, correct it.

23. Write a short notice for a class trip: give the time and place, then add one more instruction with 此外. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 5. 因而 / 从而 (therefore / thereby)

24. Complete: “We improved our method, and so saved time.” 我们改进了方法，…… 节约了时间。

25. Choose the better word: 雨下得太大，_____ 比赛取消了。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- A. 因而
- B. 从而

26. Build: "He practised every day, and so improved his speaking."

Put in order: 他每天练习，/ 口语水平。/ 从而 / 提高了

27. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 因为下雨，因而从而比赛取消了。
- B. 因为下雨，从而比赛取消了。
- C. 因为下雨，所以比赛取消了。

28. True or false? 因而 is a formal word for 所以. If false, correct it.

29. Write two sentences for a report about your school: one change the school made and what it achieved (从而), and one cause and its result (因而). Use 因而 / 从而. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 6. 可见 (this shows / clearly)

30. Complete: "There's a long queue every day, so the food must be good." 这家店每天都排长队，…… 东西很好吃。

31. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他三次都没来，可见他不想参加。
- B. 他三次都没来，他可见不想参加。
- C. 可见他不想参加，他三次都没来。

32. Build: "From this we can see that good habits are very important."

Put in order: 由此可见，/ 好习惯 / 重要。/ 非常

33. You look out of the window at dark clouds. "It looks like rain." Which fits?

- A. 看来要下雨了。
- B. 可见要下雨了。

34. True or false? 由此可见 often opens the last sentence of an essay paragraph. If false, correct it.

35. Write a short essay paragraph: give two facts about a classmate who reads a lot, then conclude with 由此可见. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

36. Find and fix the problem. You say 要不我们坐地铁吧. A classmate translates it as "Otherwise we will definitely take the metro." Correct it.

37. Use it yourself. Suggest moving the meeting to tomorrow because many people are busy today.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 要不 … 吧 (how about …)

1. 要不

要不 + suggestion + 吧.

2. B. If you hadn't helped me, I'd have been done for.

要不是 means "if it weren't for": it introduces a condition contrary to fact. 要不是你帮我，我就完了 "If you hadn't helped me, I'd have been done for."

3. 可能下雨，要不我们把野餐改到室内吧。

Reason, then 要不 + suggestion.

4. True.

True. 要不然 (also 要不) means "otherwise": 快走，要不然就迟到了 "Hurry up, otherwise we'll be late."

5. Model answer: 这儿人太多了，要不我们去对面那家吧。

Check your answer:

- **要不是** = "if it weren't for": 要不是你提醒我，我就忘了 – "If you hadn't reminded me, I'd have forgotten."
- **要不然** = "otherwise": 快走，要不然就迟到了 ("Hurry up, or we'll be late"). Different from the suggestion 要不.

■ 2. 否则 / 不然 (otherwise)

6. 否则

Advice first, then 否则 + what will happen.

7. A. 你得早点儿睡，否则明天起不来。

No 如果 before 否则, and 否则 starts the second clause.

8. 带上伞，不然会淋湿的。

不然 + 会 + result.

9. B. 要不

要不 … 吧 makes a suggestion; 否则 only means "otherwise".

10. True.

不然 here means "if you hadn't come".

11. Model answer: 快去复习吧，否则明天会考不好的。早点儿睡觉，不然明天起不来。

Check your answer:

- Each sentence gives advice first, then 否则 / 不然 + result.
- I did not put 如果 before 否则.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 3. 然而 (however – formal)

12. 然而

然而 turns to a contrast in formal writing.

13. A. 然后

然后 = then (time order). 然而 = however.

14. 然而，事情并没有这么简单。

然而 opens the sentence, followed by a comma.

15. B. 这件衣服很好看，可是太贵了。

In conversation 可是 / 但是 sound natural; 然而 is for formal writing.

16. True.

然而，… can turn the whole argument at the start of a paragraph.

17. Model answer: 手机让我们的生活方便了很多。然而，很多人每天花太多时间看手机，影响了学习和睡眠。

Check your answer:

- 然而 starts the second sentence and is followed by a comma.
- The second sentence really contrasts with the first.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 4. 此外 (in addition)

18. 此外

此外 starts a new sentence with one more point.

19. A. 另外一个问题

Only 另外 can go before a number and noun.

20. 此外，请大家带上笔记本电脑。

此外 opens the sentence, followed by a comma.

21. B. 而且

而且 links two points in one sentence; 此外 starts a new sentence.

22. True.

Both mean “besides this, in addition”.

23. Model answer: 我们星期六早上八点在学校门口集合。此外，请大家带上水和雨伞。

Check your answer:

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- 此外 starts a new sentence and adds one more point.
- The notice sounds clear and formal.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 5. 因而 / 从而 (therefore / thereby)

24. 从而

An action (改进方法) leads to a result, so 从而 + verb.

25. A. 因而

The rain is a cause, not an action someone took, and 比赛 is a new subject. Use 因而.

26. 他每天练习，从而提高了口语水平。

Method, then 从而 + verb (no new subject).

27. C. 因为下雨，所以比赛取消了。

因为 pairs with 所以. 从而 needs an action first.

28. True.

因而 / 因此 = therefore, formal.

29. Model answer: 学校增加了体育课，从而提高了学生的身体素质。今年报名的人很多，因而学校又开了两个班。

Check your answer:

- The 从而 sentence starts with an action and keeps the same subject.
- The 因而 sentence starts with a cause.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 6. 可见 (this shows / clearly)

30. 可见

Facts first, then 可见 + the conclusion.

31. A. 他三次都没来，可见他不想参加。

The evidence comes first; 可见 then starts the conclusion.

32. 由此可见，好习惯非常重要。

由此可见 opens the summing-up sentence.

33. A. 看来要下雨了。

A guess from what you see is 看来. 可见 follows facts you have just stated.

34. True.

It sums up the examples before it.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

35. Model answer: 小王每天都看半个小时书。他的作文常常得到老师的表扬。由此可见，多读书对写作很有帮助。

Check your answer:

- The facts come before 可见 / 由此可见.
- The conclusion really follows from the facts.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ Mixed practice

36. 要不 …… 吧 is a soft suggestion: "How about taking the metro instead?" Nothing has been decided.

37. Model answer. 今天很多人没空，要不我们明天再开会吧?

Review later. Tomorrow, make two 要不 …… 吧 suggestions when a plan does not work.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Nouns

HSK 5

Nouns and frames that place things in a group or in time. 当中 means “among”; 彼此 means “each other”; …… 以来 means “ever since”; 当 …… 的时候 means “when”; Noun + 这个 + category sizes something up (他这个人很热情); 某 means “a certain” (not named); and 其余 means “the rest” of a group.

At a glance

- **1.** 当中 – among / in the middle of: 同学当中，他最高。
- **2.** 彼此 – each other / one another: 我们彼此信任。
- **3.** … 以来 – ever since: 毕业以来，我一直很忙。
- **4.** 当 … 的时候 – when …: 当我做饭的时候，电话响了。
- **5.** Noun + 这个 + Category – sizing up: 他这个人很热情。
- **6.** 某 – a certain …: 他在北京某公司工作。
- **7.** 其余 vs 其他 and 别的 – the rest / other: 只来了三个人，其余的都没来。

1. 当中 (among / in the middle of)

Form: (在) + group + 当中，comment · place + 当中 (the middle)

- **同学当中，他最高。** *Tóngxué dāngzhōng, tā zuì gāo.* – Of all the classmates, he’s the tallest.
- **在这些学生当中，她最有经验。** – Among these students, she has the most experience.
- **这些学生当中，有三个人会游泳。** – Three of these students can swim.
- **桌子放在房间当中。** – The table is in the middle of the room.

How it works. Group + 当中 *dāngzhōng* sets the frame for the statement: the comment is true **within that group**. With a place, 当中 means the physical middle.

Keep the scope. 同学当中, 他最高 ranks him among the classmates being discussed; a pupil in another class could be taller. 这四个设计当中，B 最便宜 is about those four designs only; when a new design joins, check again.

The frame doesn’t make the comment true of every member: 有三个人会游泳 is about three of them. 他最高 ranks (最); 他很高 just describes.



2. 彼此 (each other / one another)

Form: participants + 彼此 + verb · verb + 彼此 (object) · 彼此彼此 (same here)

- **我们彼此信任。/ 我们互相信任。** *Wǒmen bǐcǐ xìnrèn.* – We trust each other.
- **我们了解彼此。** – We understand each other.
- **他们彼此提醒。** – They remind each other.
- A: **我的字写得很乱。** B: **彼此彼此。** – "My handwriting is messy." "Same here."

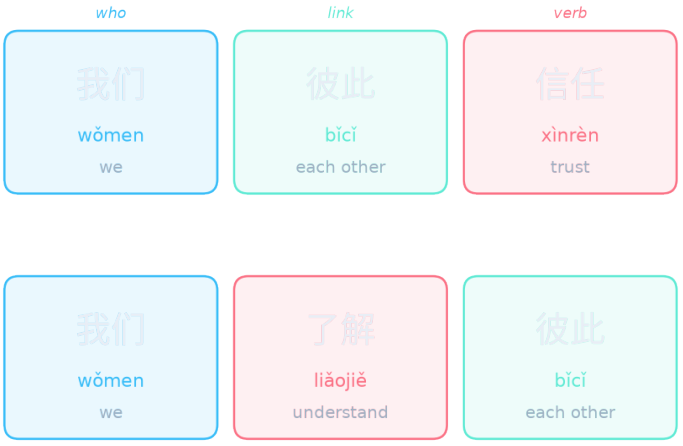
How it works. 彼此 *bǐcǐ* "each other" describes a relationship in both directions. Before a verb it overlaps with 互相. Unlike 互相, it can also be the object: 了解彼此 (with 互相, say 我们互相了解). As a reply, 彼此彼此 acknowledges a shared situation.

我们彼此了解	我们都了解老师	我信任她，她不信任我
we understand one another	each of us understands the teacher	one-way

Watch out

- Check the participants first: joining the same team doesn't prove mutual trust.
- Mutual is not equal: 他们彼此帮助 doesn't mean each spent the same time.

彼此: each other (before a verb, or as the object)



3. … 以来 (ever since)

Form: event / date / duration + 以来，comment

- **毕业以来，我一直很忙。** *Bìyè yǐlái, wǒ yìzhí hěn máng.* – I've been busy ever since I graduated.
- **毕业以来，我回学校三次了。** – Since graduating, I've been back to school three times.
- **这个月以来，我读了两本书。** – So far this month, I've read two books.
- **三年以来** – over the past three years

How it works. 以来 *yǐlái* goes **after** the starting point and frames a period from then up to the reference point (usually now). The rest of the sentence says what happened in it: a continuing state (一直很忙) or counted events (三次). 以来 itself gives no frequency.

毕业以来	毕业以后	毕业以前
period since graduation, up to now	at some point after	before graduation
回学校三次了	我搬到了上海	

Watch out

- A dated text has its own "now": a 2024 report saying 2020 年以来，学校开了三门新课 counts up to 2024. Check later events before repeating the count.

以来: from then until now



4. 当 ... 的时候 (when ...)

Form: 当 + clause + 的时候，main clause

- **当我回家的时候，天黑了。** *Dāng wǒ huí jiā de shíhou, tiān hēi le.* – When I got home, it was dark.
- **当我做饭的时候，电话响了。** – While I was cooking, the phone rang.
- **当你需要帮助的时候，给我打电话。** – Call me when you need help.

How it works. 当 …… 的时候 frames when the main event happens. The actions decide whether the frame is an interval (做饭: the call came during it) or a moment (到家). It works for the past, the future and recurring situations; it is not a past-tense marker. Shorter forms also exist: 我回家的时候.

当我做饭的时候，电话响了	我做完饭以后，电话响了
during cooking	after cooking

Watch out

- A time frame is not a cause: 当我到家的时候，下雨了 doesn't mean arriving caused the rain, or say who phoned.

当 ... 的时候: when, while



5. Noun + 这个 + Category (sizing up)

Form: person / name + 这个 + category (人, 城市 …) + comment

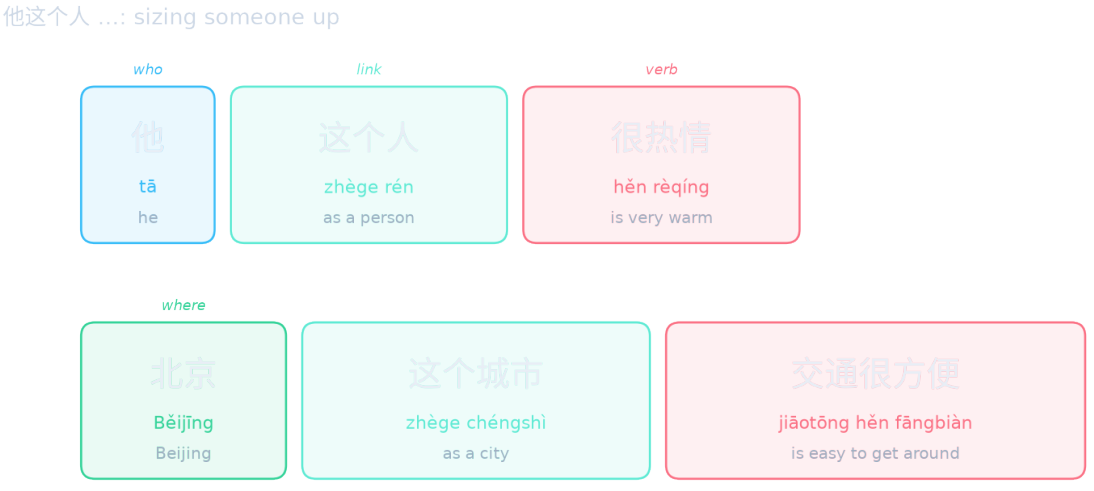
- **他这个人很热情。** *Tā zhège rén hěn rèqíng.* – He's a really warm person.
- **他这个人有点儿粗心。** – He's a bit careless, as a person.
- **北京这个城市交通很方便。** – Getting around Beijing is very convenient.

How it works. 这个 + category frames the topic "as a person / as a city" for the comment that follows. The comment decides whether it is praise or criticism; the frame itself doesn't. 他很热情 is also correct; the frame puts the person in focus. Choose a category that fits; don't add 这个 before every noun.

他这个人很热情	这个人是我的老师	这个……我还没决定
frames him for a comment	simply identifies "this person"	spoken hesitation, "um …"

Watch out

- The comment covers only what it says: 交通很方便 is about transport, not every part of life there.



6. 某 (a certain …)

Form: 某 + (measure word) + noun · surname + 某

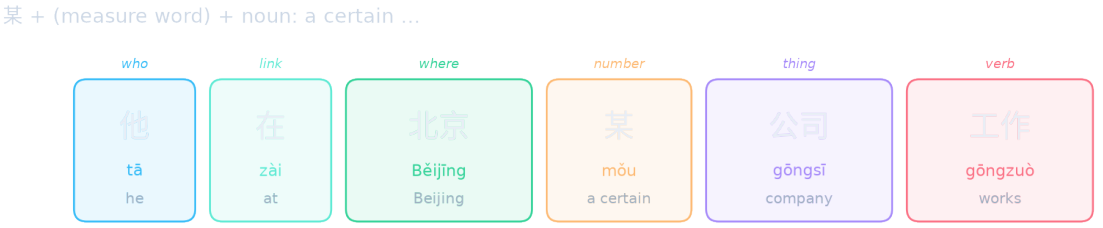
- **他在北京某公司工作。** *Tā zài Běijīng mǒu gōngsī gōngzuò.* – He works at a certain company in Beijing.
- **由于某种原因，会议推迟了。** – For some reason, the meeting was postponed.
- **有一天我在路上遇到了他。** – One day I ran into him on the street. (spoken)

How it works. 某 refers to a person, place or time without naming it; it is written (news, notices). Surname + 某 hides a full name. In speech, 一个 / 有一天. 有的 = some of a group.

某人	某种原因	王某
someone	some reason	a person surnamed Wang

Watch out

- In speech, 有一天 sounds more natural than 某天.



7. 其余 vs 其他 and 别的 (the rest / other)

Form: part …, 其余 (的) (都) … · 其他 + noun

- **只来了三个人，其余的都没来。** *Zhǐ lái le sān ge rén, qíyú de dōu méi lái.* – Only three people came; the rest didn't.
- **这些书我看了两本，其余的还没看。** – I've read two of these books; I haven't read the rest yet.
- **还有其他问题吗?** – Are there any other questions?

How it works. 其余 = all that's left after a part is named, often with 都. 其他 = other (a bit formal); 别的 = other (everyday).

其余的都没来	其他问题	别的
the rest didn't come	other questions	something else

Watch out

- For "any other …" in a question, use 其他 or 别的.

Part …，其余的 …: the rest



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 当中 (among / in the middle of)

1. Of all the classmates, she is the tallest. 同学 ……，她最高。

2. 这四个设计当中，B 最便宜 compares B with…

- A. every design in the world
- B. the four designs being discussed
- C. one other design
- D. nothing

3. Which sentence uses 当中 for a physical middle?

- A. 同学当中他最高。
- B. 这些书当中我最喜欢这本。
- C. 学生当中有三个人会游泳。
- D. 桌子放在房间当中。

4. True or false? 这些学生当中，有三个人会游泳 means all these students can swim. If false, correct it.

5. Say in Chinese: “Among these students, she has the most experience.”

6. Of these three books, I like this one best.

Put in order: 我 / 当中，/ 最喜欢 / 这本。/ 这三本书

■ 2. 彼此 (each other / one another)

7. We trust each other. 我们 …… 信任。

8. Which sentence uses 彼此 as an object?

- A. 我们互相彼此。
- B. 彼此我们了解。
- C. 我们彼此帮助。
- D. 我们应该了解彼此。

9. A: 我的字写得很乱。B: 彼此彼此。What does B mean?

- A. Mine is too, same here.
- B. You're right, it's messy.
- C. Thank you.
- D. Let's write together.

10. True or false? 他们彼此帮助 means they each spent the same amount of time helping. If false, correct it.

11. Correct the mistake: 我们应该了解互相。

12. They remind each other.

Put in order: 彼此 / 提醒。/ 他们

■ 3. ... 以来 (ever since)

13. I've been busy ever since I graduated. 毕业 ……，我一直很忙。

14. Which means "Since graduating, I've been back to school three times"?

- A. 毕业以前，我回学校三次了。
- B. 毕业以后三次，我回学校。
- C. 毕业以来，我回学校三次了。
- D. 以来毕业，我回学校三次了。

15. Where does 以来 go?

- A. before the starting point: 以来三年
- B. after the verb
- C. after the starting point: 三年以来
- D. at the end of the sentence

16. True or false? 毕业以来 and 毕业以后 mean exactly the same. If false, correct it.

17. Say in Chinese: "So far this month, I've read two books."

18. True or false? A 2024 report says 2020 年以来，学校开了三门新课. The count runs up to 2024. If false, correct it.

■ 4. 当 ... 的时候 (when ...)

19. Call me when you need help. …… 你需要帮助的时候，给我打电话。

20. 当我做饭的时候，电话响了 means the phone rang…

- A. because I was cooking
- B. after cooking
- C. while I was cooking
- D. before cooking

21. Which says "after I finished cooking"?

- A. 当我做饭的时候

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- B. 我做完饭以后
- C. 我做饭当时候
- D. 当我做饭

22. True or false? 当 …… 的时候 can only be used for the past. If false, correct it.

23. Correct the mistake: 当我回家，天黑了。

24. When I got home, it was dark.

Put in order: 天黑了。 / 我 / 的时候， / 回家 / 当

■ 5. Noun + 这个 + Category (sizing up)

25. He's a really warm person. 他 …… 人很热情。

26. Which sentence frames a city for a comment?

- A. 北京这个城市交通很方便。
- B. 这个城市是北京。
- C. 这个北京城市。
- D. 北京城市这个很方便。

27. 他这个人有点儿粗心 is…

- A. a hesitation
- B. criticism
- C. an introduction
- D. praise

28. True or false? In 这个人是我的老师, 这个 frames a comment about his character. If false, correct it.

29. Say in Chinese: "She's a very patient person."

30. My brother, as a person, is very funny.

Put in order: 这个人 / 我哥哥 / 有意思。 / 很

■ 6. 某 (a certain ...)

31. Complete (a news story): "He works at a certain company in Beijing." 他在北京 …… 公司工作。

32. Telling a friend a story – which is more colloquial?

- A. 某天我在路上遇到了他。
- B. 有一天我在路上遇到了他。

33. In a news report, 王某 means …

- A. a person surnamed Wang (full name hidden)
- B. all people called Wang

34. Build: "For some reason, the meeting was postponed."

Put in order: 某种原因， / 由于 / 推迟了。 / 会议

35. True or false? 有的 means "some (of a group)", as in 有的人喜欢，有的人不喜欢. If false, correct it.

36. Write a two-sentence school notice that doesn't name the student who found something. Use 某 at least once, and say clearly where to collect it. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 7. 其余 vs 其他 and 别的 (the rest / other)

37. Complete: "Only three people came; the rest didn't." 只来了三个人，…… 的都没来。

38. At the end of a talk – "Are there any other questions?" Which is right?

- A. 还有其余问题吗?
- B. 还有其他问题吗?

39. Chatting at dinner – "Do you want to eat anything else?" Which is most natural?

- A. 你还想吃其余吗?
- B. 你还想吃别的吗?

40. Build: "I've read two of these books; I haven't read the rest yet."

Put in order: 其余的 / 还 / 没看。/ 这些书我看了两本，

41. True or false? 其余 often goes with 都, because it covers everything that remains. If false, correct it.

42. Report on your class's homework in two sentences: how many finished, and what the rest did (其余). Then ask if there are other questions (其他). Use 其余 or 其他 and 别的. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

43. Choose 当中 or 以来: 我们班 ……，他跑得最快。/ 开学 ……，我一直很忙。

44. Say "We have known each other for ten years."

45. Find and fix the problem. A report says 自从开学以来，他每天复习. A classmate thinks the reviewing stopped when term started. Correct the timeline.

46. Use it yourself. Describe one change since you moved, and pick out one person from a group with 当中.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 当中 (among / in the middle of)

1. 当中

Group + 当中 sets the frame.

2. B. the four designs being discussed

The comment holds within the named group.

3. D. 桌子放在房间当中。

Place + 当中 = the middle of it.

4. False.

Only three of them can.

5. 在这些学生当中，她最有经验。

在 + group + 当中, then the comment.

6. 这三本书当中，我最喜欢这本。

Group + 当中 first.

■ 2. 彼此 (each other / one another)

7. 彼此 / 互相

彼此 before a verb overlaps with 互相.

8. D. 我们应该了解彼此。

彼此 can be the object; 互相 can't.

9. A. Mine is too, same here.

彼此彼此 = same here.

10. False.

Mutual doesn't mean equal.

11. 我们应该互相了解。/ 我们应该了解彼此。

互相 must go before the verb.

12. 他们彼此提醒。

Participants + 彼此 + verb.

■ 3. ... 以来 (ever since)

13. 以来

Starting point + 以来: from then until now.

14. C. 毕业以来，我回学校三次了。

以来 frames the period; the predicate gives the count.

15. C. after the starting point: 三年以来

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

以来 follows the event, date or duration.

16. False.

以来 covers the period up to now; 以后 is just a point after.

17. 这个月以来，我读了两本书。

Period + 以来, then what happened in it.

18. True.

A dated text counts up to its own date.

■ 4. 当 ... 的时候 (when ...)

19. 当

当 …… 的时候 frames the time.

20. C. while I was cooking

当 …… 的时候 = when / while.

21. B. 我做完饭以后

"After" needs 以后, not 当 …… 的时候.

22. False.

It works for the past, the future and habits.

23. 当我回家的时候，天黑了。

当 is completed by 的时候.

24. 当我回家的时候，天黑了。

当 + clause + 的时候, then the main clause.

■ 5. Noun + 这个 + Category (sizing up)

25. 这个

Person + 这个 + category, then the comment.

26. A. 北京这个城市交通很方便。

Name + 这个 + category + comment.

27. B. criticism

The comment decides: 粗心 is a criticism.

28. False.

It simply identifies "this person".

29. 她这个人很有耐心。

Person + 这个人 + comment.

30. 我哥哥这个人很有意思。

The frame comes before the comment.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 6. 某 (a certain ...)

31. 某

Not named – 某.

32. B. 有一天我在路上遇到了他。

In speech, 有一天 is more usual; 某天 sounds more written.

33. A. a person surnamed Wang (full name hidden)

Surname + 某 hides the full name.

34. 由于某种原因，会议推迟了。

某种 + noun.

35. True.

有的 divides a group.

36. Model answer: 昨天下午，某班一名同学在操场上捡到了一个钱包。丢失钱包的同学请到学校失物招领处领取。

Check your answer:

- 某 hides a name that doesn't need to be given; the place to collect it is clear.
- The style fits a notice.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 7. 其余 vs 其他 and 别的 (the rest / other)

37. 其余

Everyone left after the part named – 其余.

38. B. 还有其他问题吗?

Any other … in a question – 其他.

39. B. 你还想吃别的吗?

Everyday "else / other" – 别的.

40. 这些书我看了两本，其余的还没看。

Part named, then 其余的.

41. True.

其余的都没来.

42. Model answer: 我们班三十个人，二十五个人按时交了作业，其余的说明天交。大家还有其他问题吗?

Check your answer:

- 其余 comes after a part is named.
- 其他 is used for "other" in the question.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ Mixed practice

43. 我们班当中，他跑得最快 (among)。开学以来，我一直很忙 (ever since).

44. 我们彼此认识十年了。彼此 = each other.

45. 自从 …… 以来 marks a starting point that runs until now: since term started, he has reviewed every day.

46. Model answer. 搬家以来，我每天走路上学。我们班当中，她的中文最好。

Review later. Tomorrow, describe someone with Noun + 这个 + 人: 他这个人 ……

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Particles

HSK 5

Four particles at the end of a clause. 了 shows a change or a completed action, and its place in the sentence changes the meaning; 嘛 says something should be obvious; 呢 asks a follow-up question or keeps a situation going.

At a glance

- **1.** Final 了 – change and completion in context: 我吃饭了。
- **2.** Verb + 了 + Complement – le after the verb: 我看了两个小时书。
- **3.** Statement + 嘛 – obviously / you know: 他是新手嘛，慢慢就会了。
- **4.** 呢 – follow-up questions and shared context: 我住在上海，你呢?

1. Final 了: change and completion in context

Form: sentence + 了 (a new or now-relevant situation)

- **我吃饭了。** *Wǒ chī fàn le.* – I've eaten. (in reply to a lunch offer)
- **吃饭了!** – Dinner's ready! (calling people to the table)
- **现在不冷了。** – It's not cold any more.
- **要下雨了。** – It's about to rain.

How it works. 了 at the end of a sentence presents a changed or newly relevant situation. It is not a general past tense; the situation decides the meaning.

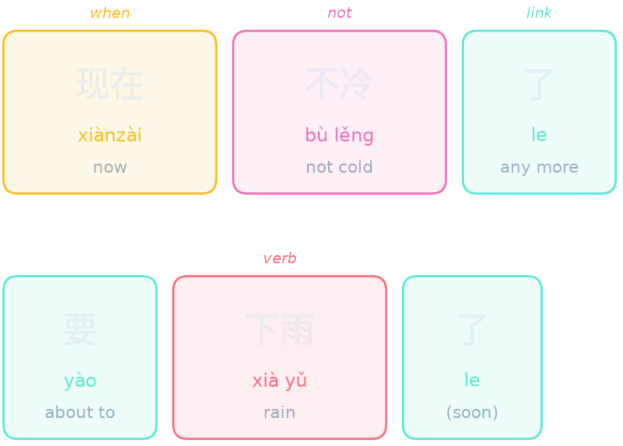
Example	What 了 does
我吃饭了。	eating has happened, so the lunch offer is answered
吃饭了!	announces mealtime: come and eat
现在不冷了。	a changed state
要下雨了。	an approaching event
我不在这里吃饭了。	a changed habit: no longer

Positions. 我吃了三碗饭 puts 了 right after the verb: the eating is carried out. 我吃了三碗饭了 has both: three bowls so far (whether a fourth follows isn't stated).

Watch out

- Denying a completed action uses 没 and drops 了: 我没吃饭.

了 at the end: a new situation



2. Verb + 了 + Complement (le after the verb)

Form: verb + 了 + duration / quantity (+ object)

- **我看了两个小时。** *Wǒ kànle liǎng gè xiǎoshí.* – I read for two hours.
- **我买了三本书。** – I bought three books.
- **等我看了这本书，再和你讨论。** – Once I've read this book, I'll discuss it with you.
- **我看了两个小时了，现在还在看。** – I've been reading for two hours, and I'm still at it.

How it works. 了 right after the verb presents the action as carried out, and the quantity after it says how long or how many. It is not a past tense: in 等我看了这本书 it marks a step completed **before** a future one. A second 了 at the end (看了两个小时了) counts up to now; the context says whether the activity continues.

The sentence answers	Example
how long?	看了两个小时
how many?	买了三本书
how long ago?	两个小时前看的

Negatives. 我没买书 denies the action and drops 了. 我没看两个小时，只看了一个小时 denies only the length: some reading happened.

Watch out

- A duration doesn't prove the book was finished; 我看了两个小时 means two hours of reading (120 minutes), not "two hours ago".



3. Statement + 嘛 (obviously / you know)

Form: statement + 嘛

- **这很简单嘛。** *Zhè hěn jiǎndān ma.* – It's simple, you know.
- **他是新手嘛。** – He's a beginner, after all.
- **别着急嘛。** – Don't rush, come on.

How it works. 嘛 at the end of a statement presents it as obvious or understood in the speaker's view: "you know", "after all". It often gives a reason (他是新手嘛, so help him). The listener can still disagree (对我来说不简单), so 嘛 is a stance, not proof. Tone decides whether it reassures or sounds impatient; the written particle doesn't show that.

这很简单嘛。	这很简单吗?	你觉得呢?
presents it as obviously easy	asks whether it's easy	invites the other view

Watch out

- 嘛 and 吗 are both *ma* without tone, but different jobs: a statement vs. a yes/no question.
- The reason must fit the facts: if the teammate is experienced, 他是新手嘛 no longer works.

嘛: obviously, you know



4. 呢: follow-up questions and shared context

Form: 你觉得呢? · topic + 呢? (and …? / where is …?)

- **我觉得上午好，你觉得呢?** *Wǒ juéde shàngwǔ hǎo, nǐ juéde ne?* – I think the morning is better. What do you think?
- **我住上海，你呢?** – I live in Shanghai. And you?
- **我的手机呢?** – Where's my phone?
- **这双多少钱? …… 这个呢?** – How much is this pair? … And this one?

How it works. 呢 asks a follow-up, and the earlier talk supplies the missing question. After 我住上海, 你呢? asks where you live; after 我午饭吃米饭, the same words ask about your lunch. With a missing object (我的手机呢?) it asks where it is.

呢 asks	吗 asks
follow-up from shared context, or with a question word (你在看什么呢?)	yes/no: 这很简单吗?

Watch out

- Not every 呢 is a question: 我正在看书呢 is a statement (in progress).
- Don't swap 吗 for 呢 in every yes/no question.
- If the topic isn't clear, name it: 你觉得这个计划怎么样呢?



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. Final 了: change and completion in context

1. It's not cold any more. 现在不冷 ……。

2. Someone offers you lunch. Which reply says "I've already eaten"?

- A. 我不吃饭。
- B. 我吃饭了。
- C. 我要吃饭。
- D. 我吃饭吗?

3. 我不在这里吃饭了 means…

- A. I'm eating here now
- B. I no longer eat here
- C. I didn't eat here
- D. I will eat here

4. True or false? 要下雨了 means it has just rained. If false, correct it.

5. Correct the mistake: 我没吃饭了。

6. 我吃了三碗饭了 means…

- A. three bowls every day
- B. three bowls, finished eating
- C. three bowls so far

- D. three bowls tomorrow

■ 2. Verb + 了 + Complement (le after the verb)

7. I read for two hours. 我看 …… 两个小时。

8. 我看了两个小时 means…

- A. I read for two hours
- B. I will read for two hours
- C. I read two books
- D. I read two hours ago

9. Which means "two hours ago"?

- A. 两个小时看了
- B. 两个小时前看的
- C. 看了两个小时
- D. 看两个小时了

10. True or false? 等我看了这本书，再和你讨论 talks about the future. If false, correct it.

11. Correct the mistake: 我没买了书。

12. 我看了两个小时了，现在还在看。Is the speaker still reading?

- A. We can't tell
- B. Yes
- C. No

■ 3. Statement + 嘛 (obviously / you know)

13. It's simple, you know. 这很简单 ……。

14. Which is a yes/no question?

- A. 这很简单嘛。
- B. 这很简单吗?
- C. 别着急嘛。
- D. 他是新手嘛。

15. 他是新手嘛 is most likely said to…

- A. explain why his mistake is understandable
- B. end a meeting
- C. ask whether he is a beginner
- D. praise his skill

16. True or false? After 这很简单嘛, the listener must agree. If false, correct it.

17. Say in Chinese, gently: "Don't rush, come on."

18. The new teammate has ten years of experience. Which sentence no longer fits?

- A. 他知道嘛。
- B. 他是新手嘛。
- C. 他做得很好嘛。
- D. 他很有经验嘛。

■ 4. 呢: follow-up questions and shared context

19. I think the morning is better. What do you think? 我觉得上午好，你觉得 ……？

20. 我住上海，你呢？ asks…

- A. whether you like it
- B. your name
- C. where you live
- D. what you think of Shanghai

21. You can't find your phone. What do you say?

- A. 我的手机吗?
- B. 我的手机嘛。
- C. 我的手机了。
- D. 我的手机呢?

22. True or false? 我正在看书呢 is a question. If false, correct it.

23. Correct the mistake: 你喜欢喝茶呢？ (a yes/no question)

24. In a shoe shop: 这双多少钱？…… 这个呢？ The second question asks…

- A. the brand
- B. the colour
- C. the size
- D. the price

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

25. Explain the difference: 我吃了饭。/ 我吃饭了。

26. Choose 嘛 or 呢: 你别着急，他是新来的 ……。/ 我去过了，你 ……？

27. Find and fix the problem. Someone says 我不喝咖啡了. A classmate reports "I didn't drink coffee yesterday." What is lost?

28. Use it yourself. Say you have finished today's reading and that you are no longer going out.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. Final 了: change and completion in context

1. 了

Sentence-final 了: a changed state.

2. B. 我吃饭了。

Final 了: eating has happened, so the offer is answered.

3. B. I no longer eat here

不 …… 了: a changed habit.

4. False.

要 …… 了 = about to happen.

5. 我没吃饭。

Denying a completed action uses 没 and drops 了.

6. C. three bowls so far

Verb-了 plus final 了: a total so far.

■ 2. Verb + 了 + Complement (le after the verb)

7. 了

Verb + 了 + duration.

8. A. I read for two hours

A duration after verb-了 answers "how long".

9. B. 两个小时前看的

前 answers "how long ago".

10. True.

Verb-了 marks a step completed before a future one.

11. 我没买书。

没 replaces verb-了.

12. B. Yes

现在还在看 says so; the double 了 counts up to now.

■ 3. Statement + 嘛 (obviously / you know)

13. 嘛

Statement + 嘛: presented as obvious.

14. B. 这很简单吗?

吗 asks; 嘛 presents as obvious.

15. A. explain why his mistake is understandable

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

嘛 presents an understood reason.

16. False.

The listener can reply 对我来说不简单.

17. 别着急嘛。

嘛 softens a request.

18. B. 他是新手嘛。

The reason must fit the facts.

■ 4. 呢: follow-up questions and shared context

19. 呢

呢 asks a follow-up from the shared topic.

20. C. where you live

The earlier sentence supplies the missing question.

21. D. 我的手机呢?

Noun + 呢? asks where something is.

22. False.

It is a statement: an action in progress.

23. 你喜欢喝茶吗?

Yes/no questions take 吗.

24. D. the price

The shared topic is price.

■ Mixed practice

25. 我吃了饭 needs more (我吃了饭就走) or a number (吃了两碗饭); it stresses the completed action. 我吃饭了 reports a new situation: I have eaten, or I'm going to eat now.

26. 他是新来的嘛 (it's obvious, so be patient)。你呢? (a follow-up question).

27. This 了 shows a change: "I don't drink coffee any more" (or "I've decided not to have one"). It is not about yesterday.

28. Model answer. 今天的书我看完了。我不出去了。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one 了 sentence for a completed action and one for a change.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Prepositional phrases

HSK 5

以上 and 以下 mean "above" and "below" a number or level: 十八岁以上 (eighteen and over), 六十分以下 (below sixty). Notices often use them, so check whether the number itself is included in the context.

以上 / 以下 (and above / and below)

Form: number + unit + 以上 / 以下 · number + unit + 以上 / 以下 + 的 + noun

- **十八岁以上才能看。** *Shíbā suì yǐshàng cái néng kàn.* – Only those 18 and over may watch.
- **三十人以下，包括三十人。** *Sānshí rén yǐxià, bāokuò sānshí rén.* – Thirty people or fewer, thirty included.
- **三十元以下的礼物都可以。** *Sānshí yuán yǐxià de lǐwù dōu kěyǐ.* – Any gift of thirty yuan or less is fine.
- **六岁以下的儿童免费。** *Liù suì yǐxià de értóng miǎnfèi.* – Children aged six and under go free.
- **今天最高气温在三十五度以上。** *Jīntiān zuì gāo qìwēn zài sānshíwǔ dù yǐshàng.* – Today's top temperature is above 35 degrees.
- **成绩八十分以上的同学可以参加比赛。** *Chéngjì bāshí fēn yǐshàng de tóngxué kěyǐ cānjiā bǐsài.* – Students who scored 80 or more can enter the competition.

How it works. 以上 *yǐshàng* "and above" and 以下 *yǐxià* "and below" follow the number **and its unit**; the unit says what is counted (岁, 人, 元, 度, 分). Before a noun, add 的: 六岁以下的儿童. With 在 they describe a range: 在三十五度以上.

In everyday use and on most notices the number itself is included, and careful notices say so with 包括 (包括三十人). 才能 turns the range into a condition: only people in it may do the thing, though other conditions may still apply. When the exact edge matters, Chinese also has words that clearly include or exclude it.

Expression	Thirty included?
三十人以下 (包括三十人)	yes
三十人以内 / 最多三十人	yes
不到三十人	no: at most 29
超过三十人	no: 31 or more

Work it out. Limit 三十人以下，包括三十人, with 29 inside: one more may enter; two more make 31, over the limit.

Watch out

- The unit comes before 以上 / 以下: *wrong:* 十八以上岁 → 十八岁以上.

- 以上 / 以下 follow the number; they never come first: *wrong:* 以上十八岁 → 十八岁以上.
- At the end of a speech or text, 以上 also means "the above": 以上是我的看法 (that is my view, as stated above).

In a passage

> 博物馆通知：本馆每天最多接待两千人。六岁以下的儿童和六十五岁以上的老人免费参观。二十人以上的团体请提前一天预约。馆内温度保持在二十度以上，请游客放心参观。

Read and notice. Who gets in free? How many people make a group that must book in advance?



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Only those 18 and over may watch. 十八岁 …… 才能看。

2. A room says 三十人以下，包括三十人. 29 people are inside. How many more may enter?

- A. 0
- B. 2
- C. 3
- D. 1

3. Which excludes thirty?

- A. 三十人以下，包括三十人
- B. 不到三十人

- C. 三十人以内
- D. 最多三十人

4. True or false? 超过三十人 includes thirty. If false, correct it.

5. Say in Chinese: “Thirty yuan or less.”

6. Children under six get in free.

Put in order: 以下的 / 免费。/ 六岁 / 儿童

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

7. Find and fix the problem. A room notice says 三十人以下, and it is clear that thirty is allowed. Twenty-nine people are inside, and two more come in. Is that allowed?

8. Use it yourself. Write an age notice for eighteen and over, then say whether people aged 17 and 18 may enter.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 以上

Number + unit + 以上.

2. D. 1

30 is the limit and it is included.

3. B. 不到三十人

不到 = fewer than.

4. False.

超过 means more than thirty: 31 or more.

5. 三十元以下

Number + unit + 以下.

6. 六岁以下的儿童免费。

Number + unit + 以下 modifies the noun.

■ Mixed practice

7. No. 29 + 2 = 31, which is more than thirty. Only one more person may enter.

8. Model answer. 十八岁以上的人可以参加。十七岁不可以，十八岁可以 (here 以上 includes eighteen).

Review later. Tomorrow, read two notices with 以上 and 以下 and check one number against each.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Prepositions

HSK 5

Prepositions for formal speech and writing. Some set the time (自从, 趁), some name who benefits or what something is based on (为, 凭, 给 as a passive), and some limit the topic (对 …… 而言, 就 …… 来说, 在内, 至于). They come before the verb or at the start of the sentence.

At a glance

Time

- **1.** 自从 – ever since: 自从来到这儿，我每天都很开心。
- **2.** 趁 – while / taking advantage of: 快趁热吃吧！

For whom, and on what basis

- **3.** 为 + Person – for someone's sake: 我们为大家服务。
- **4.** 凭 – on the basis of / by: 凭票入场。
- **5.** 给 – colloquial passive: 杯子给打破了！
- **6.** 作为 – as, in the role of: 作为学生，我们应该努力学习。

Limiting the topic

- **7.** 对 … 而言 – as far as … is concerned: 对新手而言，这很难。
- **8.** 就 … 来说 – as far as … goes: 就价格来说，这个不贵；就质量来说，还不知道。
- **9.** … 在内 – including: 包括我在内，一共五个人。
- **10.** 至于 – as for / when it comes to: 质量没问题。

1. 自从 (ever since)

Form: 自从 + earlier event / time，later situation

- **自从来这儿，我很开心。** *Zìcóng lái zhèr, wǒ hěn kāixīn.* – Ever since I came here, I've been happy.
- **自从三月搬来，我去过图书馆三次。** – Since moving here in March, I've been to the library three times.
- **自从换了座位，我看黑板清楚多了。** – Since I changed seats, I can see the board much more clearly.

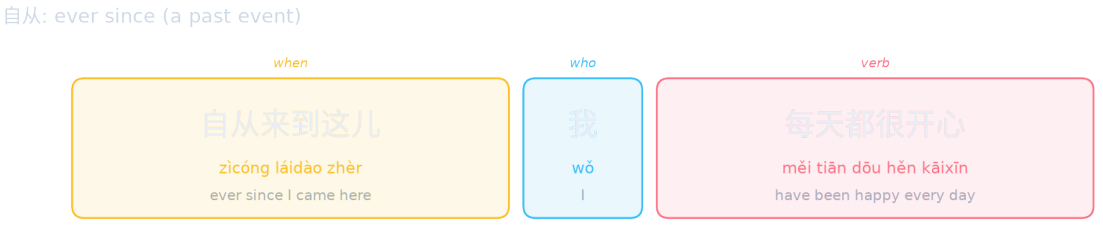
How it works. 自从 *zìcóng* introduces a past starting point; the main clause gives the state or events since then, up to the time of speaking. A count (三次) covers that whole period, not "each day", and an April report stays an April report when read in June.

自从三月搬来	从明天开始	从学校走到车站
since a past event	from a future start	from a place (a route)

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Watch out

- 自从 is only for a **past** start; for future starts and places use 从 (*wrong:* 自从明天 → 从明天开始).
- Time order is not proof of cause: the clearer view might also come from new glasses.



2. 趁 (while / taking advantage of)

Form: 趁 + favourable time / situation + action

- **趁热吃吧。** *Chèn rè chī ba.* – Eat it while it's hot.
- **趁午休去银行。** – Go to the bank during the lunch break.
- **趁雨停了，赶快回家。** – The rain has stopped; let's hurry home while we can.
- **趁现在还年轻，多去旅行。** – Travel while you're still young.

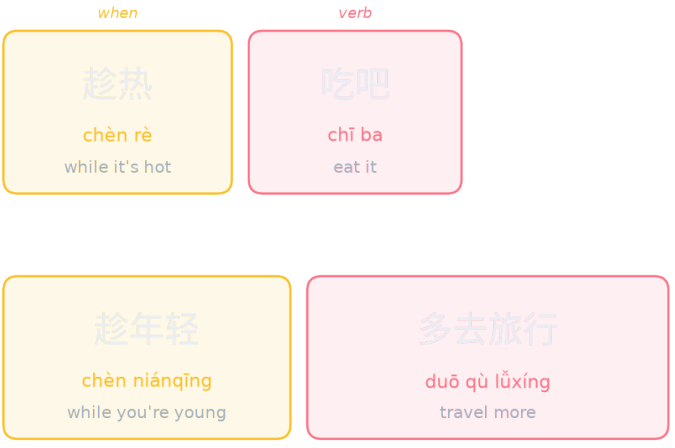
How it works. 趁 *chèn* names an opportunity that may not last, and the action takes advantage of it. It is more than "at the same time": 雨停的时候，我们在车站 only says where we were.

Check the window. A break ends at 12:30; a 20-minute task started at 12:20 ends at 12:40, ten minutes too late. 趁 doesn't make the task fit.

Watch out

- Once the chance has passed (the food is cold), 趁热吃吧 no longer fits.
- 趁 usually comes before the verb phrase (*wrong:* 吃趁热).

趁: use the chance before it's gone



3. 为 + Person (for someone's sake)

Form: subject + 为 (wèi) + person + action

- **我们为大家服务。** *Wǒmen wèi dàjiā fúwù.* – We serve everyone.
- **我为朋友准备了晚饭。** – I made dinner for my friend.
- **我为你高兴。** – I'm happy for you.

How it works. 为 *wèi* names the person an action is meant to benefit, and it goes **before** the verb (*wrong:* 我服务为大家). The doer and the person served are different roles. With feelings, 为 names whose situation causes the feeling: 我为你高兴, 别为我担心.

为 + person	为了 + goal
为朋友准备晚饭	为了早点到，我坐了地铁
for someone's benefit	in order to

The two overlap in some formal uses (为人民服务, 为健康运动), so learn whole phrases.

Watch out

- Purpose isn't success: 我为朋友准备了晚饭，但朋友没来.



4. 凭 (on the basis of / by)

Form: 凭 + ticket / resource / basis + action

- **凭票入场。** *Píng piào rùchǎng.* – Admission by ticket only.
- **凭努力，他成功了。** – He succeeded through hard work.
- **凭经验，他觉得这台机器没问题。** – Going by experience, he thought the machine was fine.
- **你凭什么决定?** – What gives you the right to decide?

How it works. 凭 *píng* names what an action rests on: a document you show, a resource or ability you rely on, or grounds for a judgement. On notices it is formal and brief (凭票入场, 凭身份证领取). 凭什么 asks for someone's grounds and usually sounds like a challenge.

Read the whole notice. 凭当天有效票入场 needs a ticket valid **that day**; an old ticket doesn't qualify.

Watch out

- A basis isn't proof: 凭经验 is not a measured safety check.
- One success (凭努力，他成功了) doesn't promise that effort always succeeds.



5. 给 (colloquial passive)

Form: affected thing + 给 + (doer) + verb + result

- **杯子给打破了。** *Bēizi gěi dǎpò le.* – The cup got broken.
- **杯子给小李打破了。** – The cup got broken by Xiao Li.
- **门给关上了。** – The door got shut.

How it works. In speech, 给 can work like 被: the affected thing comes first, and a doer may follow 给 or be left out. It usually reports something that happened to the thing, often unwelcome. The verb needs a result or 了 (打破了, 关上了).

小李打破了杯子	杯子给小李打破了	杯子给打破了
doer first	cup first, doer named	cup first, no doer

Watch out

- No doer named means **unknown**, not "the speaker" and not "on purpose".
- 给 has other jobs: 我给他一个杯子 (give), 我给他打电话 (to / for). Decide from the whole sentence.
- In formal writing use 被.



6. 作为 (as, in the role of)

Form: 作为 + role，subject + … · 把 A 作为 B

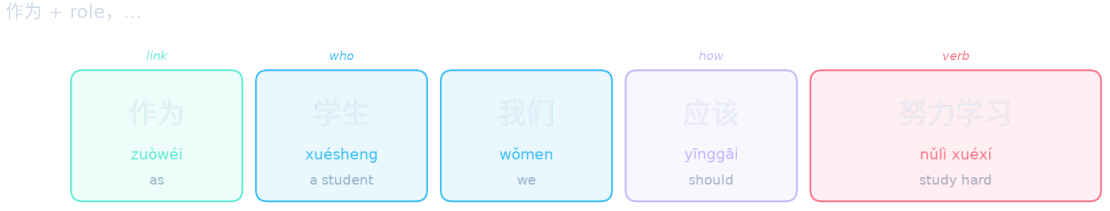
- **作为学生，我们应该努力学习。** *Zuòwéi xuésheng, wǒmen yīnggāi nǔlì xuéxí.* – As students, we should study hard.
- **作为你的朋友，我得告诉你实话。** – As your friend, I have to tell you the truth.
- **我们把这本书作为课本。** – We use this book as the textbook.

How it works. 作为 + role names the role the subject speaks or acts in; the role must match the subject after the comma. As a verb, 作为 = serve as. Everyday: 把 A 当作 / 当成 B.

作为老师	作为例子	把我当成朋友
as a teacher	as an example	treat me as a friend

Watch out

- *wrong:* 作为老师，学生都喜欢他 → 他是老师，学生都喜欢他.



7. 对 … 而言 (as far as … is concerned)

Form: 对 + person / group + 而言，comment

- **对我而言，这很重要。** *Duì wǒ ér yán, zhè hěn zhòngyào.* – For me, this is important.

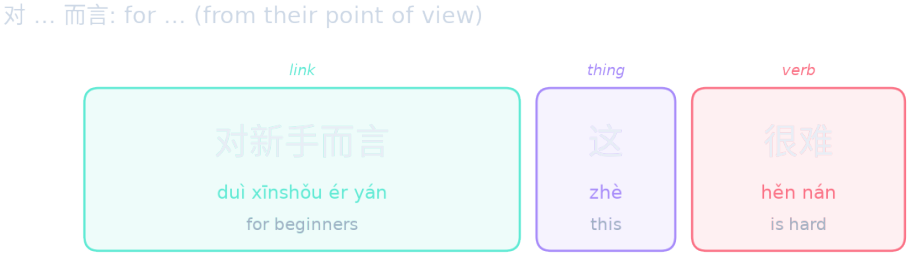
- **对新手而言，这很难；对熟练的人而言，这很容易。** – For beginners it's hard; for experienced people it's easy.
- **对住得远的学生而言，这不方便。** – For students who live far away, this is inconvenient.

How it works. 对 …… 而言 *duì … ér yán* names whose point of view the comment takes. It is the formal twin of 对 …… 来说. Different groups can judge the same thing differently without contradiction.

对学生而言，这个安排很方便	学生说这个安排很方便
a judgement from students' angle	reports what students said

Watch out

- Keep the group in your paraphrase: "important to me", not "important for everyone".
- A comment on one group says nothing about another: 对住得远的学生而言 is not about students living nearby.



8. 就 … 来说 (as far as … goes)

Form: 就 + aspect + 来说，comment

- **就价格来说，不贵。** *Jiù jiàgé lái shuō, bú guì.* – Price-wise, it isn't expensive.
- **就质量来说，还需要检查。** – As for quality, it still needs checking.
- **就交通来说，这里很方便。** – In terms of transport, this place is very convenient.

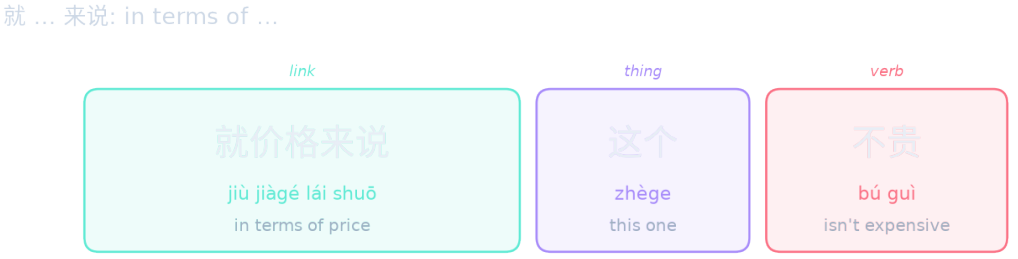
How it works. 就 …… 来说 limits the comment to one **aspect** of the topic. Other aspects need their own comments. For example, for one item: price, not expensive; quality, not tested; delivery, a week. A decision combines them all.

就价格来说	对我而言 / 对我来说
frames an aspect of the thing	frames a person's viewpoint
不贵 (for this kind of product)	还是太贵 (for my budget)

Both comments can be true together.

Watch out

- This 就 is part of the frame; it is not "then / at once" as in 我吃完饭就走.



9. … 在内 (including)

Form: 包括 + member(s) + 在内, whole / total

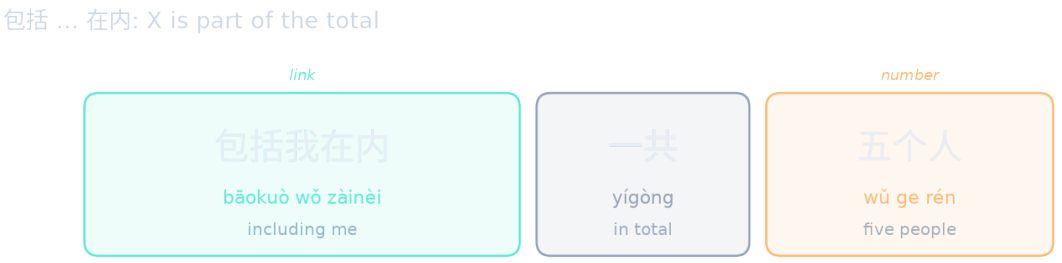
- **包括我在内，一共五个人。** *Bāokuò wǒ zàinèi, yígòng wǔ gè rén.* – Five people in all, including me.
- **包括两位老师在内，一共八个人。** – Eight people in all, including two teachers.
- **包括周末在内，每天都开放。** – It's open every day, weekends included.

How it works. The named member sits between 包括 and 在内, and is already **inside** the total. Count each person once.

Sentence	Total	Others
包括我在内，一共五个人	5	4
除了我，还有五个人	6	5
包括两位老师在内，一共八个人	8	6

Watch out

- 在内 means included (*wrong:* left out); for leaving out, use 除了 … 以外.
- Inclusion tells you what belongs to the set, not other facts: 每天都开放 gives no opening hours.



10. 至于 (as for / when it comes to)

Form: (earlier topic …)，至于 + new topic，comment

- **质量没问题。至于价格，以后再说。** *Zhìyú jiàgé, yǐhòu zài shuō.* – The quality is fine. As for the price, we'll talk about it later.
- **至于送货时间，明天确认。** – As for delivery, we'll confirm the time tomorrow.
- **至于谁来负责，我们还没决定。** – As for who will be in charge, we haven't decided.

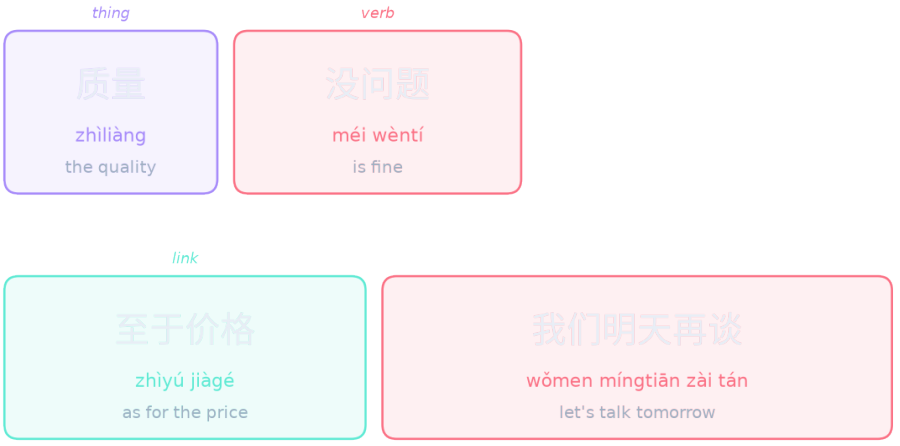
How it works. 至于 *zhìyú* turns to a related, separate topic, often after one point is settled. The comment then says what state that topic is in: postponed, undecided or settled. Raising a topic doesn't settle it, and no price or person is decided above.

至于价格，……	不至于这么贵吧
as for the price …	it surely isn't **that** expensive

Watch out

- 不至于 "not so bad as to" is a separate expression; don't translate it "as for".
- 明天确认送货时间 confirms the time tomorrow; delivery itself may be later.

至于: as for (the next topic)



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 自从 (ever since)

1. Ever since I came here, I've been happy. …… 来这儿，我很开心。

2. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 从明天开始，我每天跑步。
- B. 自从学校走到车站。
- C. 自从明天开始，我每天跑步。
- D. 自从下个月，我去北京。

3. 自从三月搬来，我去过图书馆三次。The three visits happened…

- A. before March
- B. between March and now
- C. in March only
- D. every day since March

4. True or false? 自从换了座位，我看黑板清楚多了 proves the seat was the only reason. If false, correct it.

5. Say in Chinese: "Since I started exercising, I've slept better."

6. Ever since he moved away, we haven't met.

Put in order: 就没 / 我们 / 见过面。/ 他搬走以后，/ 自从

■ 2. 趁 (while / taking advantage of)

7. Eat it while it's hot. …… 热吃吧。

8. Which sentence uses 趁 correctly?

- A. 趁吃热。
- B. 吃趁热吧。
- C. 我趁。
- D. 趁年轻，多去旅行。

9. A break ends at 12:30. A 20-minute task starts at 12:20. When does it finish?

- A. 12:20
- B. 12:50
- C. 12:40
- D. 12:30

10. True or false? 雨停的时候，我们在车站 uses the pause as an opportunity. If false, correct it.

11. Say in Chinese: "While the rain has stopped, let's hurry home."

12. Go to the bank during your lunch break.

Put in order: 去 / 银行。/ 趁 / 午休

■ 3. 为 + Person (for someone's sake)

13. We serve everyone. 我们 …… 大家服务。

14. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我们大家为服务。
- B. 我们为大家服务。
- C. 为我们大家服务。
- D. 我们服务为大家。

15. 我为你高兴 means…

- A. I'm happy because of me
- B. you are happy for me
- C. I'm happy for you
- D. I make you happy

16. True or false? 我为朋友准备了晚饭，但朋友没来 is a contradiction. If false, correct it.

17. Choose 为 or 为了: …… 早点到，我坐了地铁。

18. Say in Chinese: "Don't worry about me."

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 4. 凭 (on the basis of / by)

19. Admission by ticket only. …… 票入场。

20. 你凭什么决定？ usually sounds like…

- A. a polite thank-you
- B. a compliment
- C. a challenge to someone's right to decide
- D. a request for a ticket

21. The notice says 凭当天有效票入场. Which ticket works?

- A. a ticket valid today
- B. yesterday's ticket
- C. any ticket
- D. a ticket for next week

22. True or false? 凭努力，他成功了 promises that hard work always succeeds. If false, correct it.

23. Say in Chinese: "Going by experience, I think it'll rain."

24. Collect your parcel with your ID card.

Put in order: 领取 / 包裹。/ 凭 / 身份证 / 请

■ 5. 给 (colloquial passive)

25. The cup got broken. 杯子 …… 打破了。

26. 杯子给小李打破了 means…

- A. Xiao Li broke the cup
- B. Xiao Li got a cup
- C. someone gave Xiao Li a cup
- D. the cup broke Xiao Li

27. In which sentence is 给 NOT a passive marker?

- A. 我给他一个杯子。
- B. 门给关上了。
- C. 书给人拿走了。
- D. 杯子给打破了。

28. True or false? 门给关上了 tells us who closed the door. If false, correct it.

29. Rewrite with 被 for formal writing: 杯子给打破了。

30. My bike got stolen.

Put in order: 人 / 偷走了。/ 我的自行车 / 给

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 6. 作为 (as, in the role of)

31. Complete: “As your friend, I have to tell you the truth.” …… 你的朋友，我得告诉你实话。

32. Which is correct?

- A. 作为老师，他对学生很耐心。
- B. 作为老师，学生都很喜欢他。

33. “He treats me as a good friend.” Which sounds most natural in speech?

- A. 他把我当成好朋友。
- B. 他作为我好朋友。

34. Build: “We use this book as the textbook.”

Put in order: 作为 / 把这本书 / 课本。/ 我们

35. True or false? 这件事可以作为一个例子 means “This can serve as an example.” If false, correct it.

36. Give a short speech opening (two sentences) starting with 作为 + your role: a class monitor, a new student, or a team captain. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 7. 对 ... 而言 (as far as ... is concerned)

37. For me, this is important. 对我 ……，这很重要。

38. Which is the everyday twin of 对 …… 而言?

- A. 为了 ……
- B. 关于 ……
- C. 对 …… 来说
- D. 按照 ……

39. 对新手而言，这很难 tells us…

- A. beginners said it was hard
- B. experts find it hard too
- C. it’s hard from beginners’ point of view
- D. it is hard for everyone

40. True or false? 对学生而言，这个安排很方便 means the students said it was convenient. If false, correct it.

41. Say in Chinese: “For students who live far away, this is inconvenient.”

42. For older people, the internet is not so easy.

Put in order: 不太容易。/ 上网 / 而言，/ 老年人 / 对

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 8. 就 ... 来说 (as far as ... goes)

43. Price-wise, it isn't expensive. …… 价格来说，不贵。

44. 就价格来说，不贵 tells us about…

- A. the quality
- B. the delivery time
- C. everything about the item
- D. the price only

45. In which sentence does 就 mean "then, at once"?

- A. 就交通来说，很方便。
- B. 就质量来说，还可以。
- C. 就价格来说，不贵。
- D. 我吃完饭就走。

46. True or false? 就价格来说，不贵 and 对我来说，太贵了 can both be true. If false, correct it.

47. Say in Chinese: "In terms of transport, this place is very convenient."

48. As far as quality goes, it still needs checking.

Put in order: 来说，/ 就 / 还需要 / 检查。/ 质量

■ 9. ... 在内 (including)

49. Five people in all, including me. 包括我 ……，一共五个人。

50. 包括两位老师在内，一共八个人。How many are not teachers?

- A. 8
- B. 2
- C. 6
- D. 10

51. 除了我，还有五个人。How many people in total?

- A. 4
- B. 7
- C. 5
- D. 6

52. True or false? 在内 means the item is left out. If false, correct it.

53. Say in Chinese: "Open every day, weekends included."

54. Including tax, the total is 200 yuan.

Put in order: 一共 / 在内，/ 税 / 两百块。/ 包括

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 10. 至于 (as for / when it comes to)

55. As for the price, we'll talk later. …… 价格，以后再说。

56. 至于谁来负责，我们还没决定。Who is in charge?

- A. everyone
- B. the listener
- C. not decided yet
- D. the speaker

57. 不至于这么贵吧 means…

- A. surely it isn't that expensive
- B. it's very expensive
- C. how much is it?
- D. as for the price …

58. True or false? 至于 can open a conversation with no earlier topic. If false, correct it.

59. Say in Chinese: "The quality is fine. As for delivery, we'll confirm tomorrow."

60. I'll book the tickets; as for the hotel, you choose.

Put in order: 酒店，/ 至于 / 我订票，/ 你来选吧。

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

61. Choose 自从 or 趁: …… 搬到上海，他就没回过老家。/ …… 天还没黑，我们快走吧。

62. Choose 凭 or 为: 他 …… 自己的努力考上了大学。/ 妈妈 …… 我做了一桌菜。

63. Say "Ten people came, including me."

64. You have answered about the hotel. Move on to the ticket with 至于.

65. Find and fix the problem. A classmate thinks 我给老师写信 means the letter has already been handed to the teacher. Correct it.

66. Use it yourself. Say that admission is based on exam results, and suggest going out while it is still sunny.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 自从 (ever since)

1. 自从

自从 + past starting point.

2. A. 从明天开始，我每天跑步。

自从 is only for a past start; future starts use 从.

3. B. between March and now

A count after 自从 covers the whole period.

4. False.

Time order is not proof of cause.

5. 自从开始锻炼，我睡得好多了。

自从 + event, then the later situation.

6. 自从他搬走以后，我们就没见过面。

自从 + event (以后), then the result.

■ 2. 趁 (while / taking advantage of)

7. 趁

趁 + favourable state + action.

8. D. 趁年轻，多去旅行。

趁 + opportunity comes before the action.

9. C. 12:40

趁午休 doesn't make the task fit.

10. False.

It only says where we were; 趁雨停了，赶快回家 uses the chance.

11. 趁雨停了，赶快回家吧。

趁 + window + action.

12. 趁午休去银行。

趁 + time + action.

■ 3. 为 + Person (for someone's sake)

13. 为

为 + person, before the verb.

14. B. 我们为大家服务。

为 + person goes before the verb.

15. C. I'm happy for you

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

With feelings, 为 names whose situation causes them.

16. False.

Purpose isn't success: the dinner was meant for the friend.

17. 为了

为了 + goal = in order to.

18. 别为我担心。

为 + person + feeling.

■ 4. 凭 (on the basis of / by)

19. 凭

凭 + document: what entry rests on.

20. C. a challenge to someone's right to decide

凭什么 asks for grounds, usually as a challenge.

21. A. a ticket valid today

当天有效 narrows which ticket counts.

22. False.

It reports one success; it is no promise.

23. 凭经验，我觉得会下雨。

凭 + basis + judgement.

24. 请凭身份证领取包裹。

凭 + document + action.

■ 5. 给 (colloquial passive)

25. 给

Colloquial passive: thing + 给 + verb + result.

26. A. Xiao Li broke the cup

The doer follows 给.

27. A. 我给他一个杯子。

我给他一个杯子: 给 = give.

28. False.

No doer is named: unknown.

29. 杯子被打破了。

被 is the formal passive.

30. 我的自行车给人偷走了。

Thing + 给 + doer + verb + result.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 6. 作为 (as, in the role of)

31. 作为

In the role of – 作为.

32. A. 作为老师，他对学生很耐心。

The role (老师) must match the subject after the comma (他).

33. A. 他把我当成好朋友。

Everyday – 把 A 当成 B.

34. 我们把这本书作为课本。

把 A 作为 B.

35. True.

作为 = to serve as.

36. Model answer: 作为班长，我想先感谢大家的支持。我会认真听每个同学的意见，让咱们班变得更好。

Check your answer:

- The role after 作为 matches the subject that follows.
- The tone fits a speech.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 7. 对 ... 而言 (as far as ... is concerned)

37. 而言

对 …… 而言 names a viewpoint.

38. C. 对 …… 来说

对 …… 来说 is common in speech.

39. C. it's hard from beginners' point of view

The comment takes the beginners' angle.

40. False.

It is a judgement from their angle, not a quotation.

41. 对住得远的学生而言，这不方便。

对 + group + 而言, then the comment.

42. 对老年人而言，上网不太容易。

Viewpoint first.

■ 8. 就 ... 来说 (as far as ... goes)

43. 就

就 …… 来说 limits the comment to one aspect.

44. D. the price only

One aspect per frame.

45. D. 我吃完饭就走。

就 in 就 …… 来说 is part of the frame.

46. True.

One frames the item's aspect, the other a person's budget.

47. 就交通来说，这里很方便。

就 + aspect + 来说.

48. 就质量来说，还需要检查。

Frame first, then the comment.

■ 9. ... 在内 (including)

49. 在内

包括 + member + 在内.

50. C. 6

The teachers are inside the total: 8 − 2.

51. D. 6

除了 adds: five others plus me.

52. False.

在内 means included.

53. 包括周末在内，每天都开放。

包括 …… 在内 + the whole.

54. 包括税在内，一共两百块。

The member sits between 包括 and 在内.

■ 10. 至于 (as for / when it comes to)

55. 至于

至于 turns to a separate topic.

56. C. not decided yet

Raising a topic doesn't settle it.

57. A. surely it isn't that expensive

不至于 = not so bad as to.

58. False.

It needs an earlier point to turn away from.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

59. 质量没问题。至于送货时间，明天确认。

First point, then 至于 + new point.

60. 我订票，至于酒店，你来选吧。

至于 + topic + comment.

■ Mixed practice

61. 自从搬到上海 (ever since)。趁天还没黑 (while the chance is there).

62. 他凭自己的努力考上了大学 (on the basis of)。妈妈为我做了一桌菜 (for my sake).

63. 来了十个人，包括我在内。… 在内 means "including".

64. 至于票，我们明天再买。至于 changes to a related topic.

65. 给 + person here means "to": "I am writing (or write) a letter to the teacher." It does not say the letter has arrived.

66. Model answer. 学校凭考试成绩录取学生。趁天气好，我们出去走走吧。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one sentence with 自从 and one with 至于.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Sentence patterns – focus & existence

HSK 5

Four patterns that focus on one point. 要不是 imagines the opposite of what happened ("if it weren't for"); 多亏 thanks someone for a good result; …… 而已 makes something small ("that's all"); and 将 is a formal 把 used in writing.

At a glance

- **1.** 要不是 – if it weren't for: 要不是你，我就迷路了。
- **2.** 多亏 – thanks to / luckily: 多亏了你，我才找到。
- **3.** … 而已 – that's all / nothing more: 我只是开玩笑而已。
- **4.** 将 – a formal 把: 请将手机调成静音。

1. 要不是 (if it weren't for)

Form: 要不是 + person / event (的话)，(subject) + 就 + imagined result + 了

- **要不是你，我就迷路了。** *Yàobúshì nǐ, wǒ jiù mílù le.* – If it weren't for you, I'd have got lost.
- **要不是你提醒，我可能就迟到了。** – Without your reminder, I might have been late.
- **要不是下雨，我们就去爬山了。** – If it weren't for the rain, we'd have gone hiking.

How it works. 要不是 *yàobúshì* names something that **really happened** (your help, the rain) and imagines the result without it. The result clause is unreal: in the first example, nobody got lost. 可能 softens the imagined result.

要不是你提醒，我就迟到了	多亏你提醒，我才没迟到
imagines the bad alternative	credits the real good result

Watch out

- To report a real event, just state it: 我迷路了.
- 要不是 ≠ 要不 (how about …) and ≠ 要不然 (otherwise).



2. 多亏 (thanks to / luckily)

Form: 多亏 (了) + helper / event, (subject) + (才) + good result

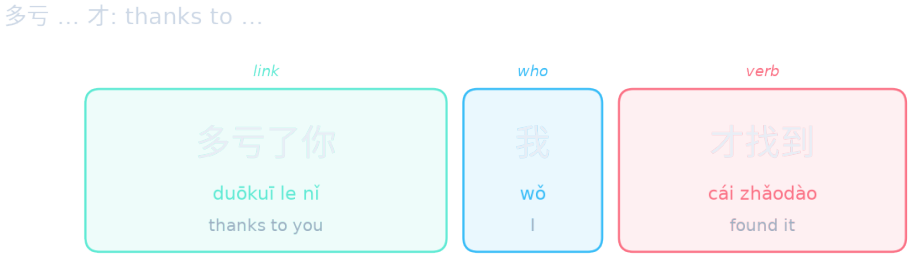
- **多亏了你，我才找到。** *Duōkuī le nǐ, wǒ cái zhǎodào.* – Thanks to you, I found it.
- **多亏你提醒，我才没迟到。** – Thanks to your reminder, I wasn't late.
- **多亏你提醒，我带了伞。** – Good thing you reminded me; I brought an umbrella.

How it works. 多亏 *duōkuī* credits help or luck for a good result: thanks to …, luckily. 才 is common and stresses that the result depended on it; it is not required. The good result can be avoiding something bad (没迟到).

多亏	要不是
states the real good result	imagines the bad result without it

Watch out

- Thanks to one helper doesn't mean nobody else helped.
- The result clause must match what happened: if the bag is still missing, 我才找到 is wrong.
- In ordinary sincere use 多亏 is thanks, not blame (an ironic tone can reverse it).



3. … 而已 (that's all / nothing more)

Form: (只是 / 不过 / 只) + statement + 而已

- **我只是开玩笑而已。** *Wǒ zhǐshì kāi wánxiào éryǐ.* – I was only joking, that's all.
- **我只看了两页而已。** – I've only read two pages.
- **两千元而已。** – It's only two thousand yuan.

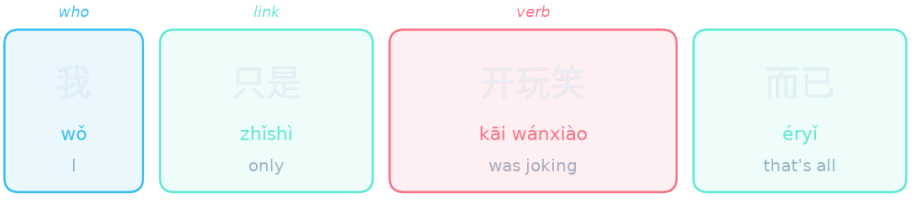
How it works. 而已 *éryǐ* closes a statement with "and nothing more", playing down an amount, role or intention. It often pairs with 只是, 不过 or 只 earlier in the sentence. It is slightly formal or emphatic; 罢了 is similar.

What is played down	Example
an intention	只是开玩笑而已
an amount	只看了两页而已
a role	只是提供建议而已

Watch out

- 而已 shows the speaker's attitude, not the facts: 两千元 may still be a lot for you, and 只等了四分钟 is still longer than a three-minute deadline.
- "Only joking" doesn't mean the listener wasn't hurt.

只是 … 而已: only …, that's all



4. 将 (a formal 把)

Form: (请) + 将 + object + verb + result / place

- **请将门关上。** *Qǐng jiāng mén guānshang.* – Please close the door.
- **请将文件放在桌上。** – Please put the documents on the table.
- **请不要将旧文件删除。** – Please don't delete the old files.

How it works. 将 *jiāng* is the written, formal form of 把: it brings the object before the verb, and the verb needs a result or destination (关上, 放在桌上). It is typical of notices, instructions and news. The negative goes before 将 (请不要将 ……).

请将门关上	会议将在明天举行	门被关上了
= 把: object marker	"will": future (formal)	passive report

Watch out

- Decide 将's job from what follows: an object then a verb means 把-like; a verb right after 将 means "will".
- An instruction is a request, not a report that it was done.

将 = 把 in writing



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 要不是 (if it weren't for)

1. If it weren't for you, I'd have got lost. …… 你，我就迷路了。

2. 要不是你提醒，我就迟到了。Was the speaker late?

- A. No
- B. We can't tell
- C. Yes

3. Which means "how about…"?

- A. 不要
- B. 要不然
- C. 要不
- D. 要不是

4. True or false? 要不是下雨，我们就去爬山了 means it didn't rain. If false, correct it.

5. Say in Chinese: "If it weren't for the traffic, we'd be there by now."

6. If it weren't for your help, I couldn't have done it.

Put in order: 我 / 要不是 / 你帮忙， / 就 / 做不完了。

■ 2. 多亏 (thanks to / luckily)

7. Thanks to you, I found it. …… 了你，我才找到。

8. Choose the best ending: 多亏你提醒，……

- A. 所以我迟到了。
- B. 我就迟到了。
- C. 我才没迟到。
- D. 我很生气。

9. How is 多亏 different from 要不是?

- A. 多亏 is always ironic
- B. they mean the same
- C. 要不是 is only positive
- D. 多亏 states the real good result; 要不是 imagines the bad one

10. True or false? 多亏你提醒，我带了伞 is wrong because it has no 才. If false, correct it.

11. Say in Chinese: “Luckily the doctor came quickly.”

12. Thanks to the map, we didn’t get lost.

Put in order: 地图，/ 才 / 多亏了 / 我们 / 没迷路。

■ 3. … 而已 (that’s all / nothing more)

13. I was only joking, that’s all. 我只是开玩笑 ……。

14. Which word often pairs with 而已?

- A. 一定
- B. 因为
- C. 越
- D. 只是

15. 我只等了四分钟而已. The deadline was three minutes. Was the wait within it?

- A. No
- B. Yes
- C. We can’t tell

16. True or false? 两千元而已 proves the price is cheap for everyone. If false, correct it.

17. Say in Chinese: “I only read two pages.”

18. It’s just a small cold, nothing more.

Put in order: 而已。/ 是 / 小感冒 / 不过

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 4. 将 (a formal 把)

19. Please close the door. 请 …… 门关上。

20. In 会议将在明天举行, 将 means…

- A. = 把
- B. already
- C. will (future)
- D. passive

21. Which is the correct negative?

- A. 请将旧文件删除不要。
- B. 请不要将旧文件删除。
- C. 请将不要旧文件删除。
- D. 请将旧文件不要删除。

22. True or false? 请将文件放在桌上 reports that the file is already on the table. If false, correct it.

23. Rewrite in everyday speech: 请将手机关掉。

24. Please put the documents on the table.

Put in order: 将 / 文件 / 桌上。/ 放在 / 请

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

25. Choose 要不是 or 多亏: …… 你提醒我，我就忘了。/ …… 你提醒我，我才没忘。

26. Make it sound small: 我只是问问 + 而已.

27. Rewrite formally with 将: 请把手机关上。

28. Find and fix the problem. A classmate reads 要不是你提醒，我就迟到了 as "I was late." Correct the reading.

29. Use it yourself. Thank a friend for helping you find your bag, then say all you did was make a suggestion.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 要不是 (if it weren't for)

1. 要不是
要不是 + real help，就 + imagined result.
2. A. No
The lateness is imagined; the reminder really happened.
3. C. 要不
要不 + suggestion + 吧.
4. False.
It did rain, so they didn't go.
5. 要不是堵车，我们早就到了。
Real obstacle, imagined result.
6. 要不是你帮忙，我就做不完了。
要不是 + condition，subject + 就 + result.

■ 2. 多亏 (thanks to / luckily)

7. 多亏
多亏 credits help for a good result.
8. C. 我才没迟到。
多亏 needs a real good result.
9. D. 多亏 states the real good result; 要不是 imagines the bad one
Compare 多亏你，我才没迟到 with 要不是你，我就迟到了.
10. False.
才 is common but not required.
11. 多亏医生来得快。
多亏 + event.
12. 多亏了地图，我们才没迷路。
多亏 (了) + helper，才 + result.

■ 3. ... 而已 (that's all / nothing more)

13. 而已
而已 closes a statement: nothing more.
14. D. 只是
只是 / 不过 …… 而已.
15. A. No

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

而已 plays it down, but four is still more than three.

16. False.

It shows the speaker's attitude, not the listener's budget.

17. 我只看了两页而已。

只 …… 而已.

18. 不过是小感冒而已。

不过 …… 而已.

■ 4. 将 (a formal 把)

19. 将

Formal 将 = 把.

20. C. will (future)

A verb (phrase) follows directly: future 将.

21. B. 请不要将旧文件删除。

The negative goes before 将.

22. False.

It is a request.

23. 请把手机关掉。

将 is the written form of 把.

24. 请将文件放在桌上。

将 + object + verb + place.

■ Mixed practice

25. 要不是你提醒我，我就忘了 (if you hadn't, I would have)。多亏你提醒我 (thanks to you). Both thank someone; 要不是 imagines what would have happened.

26. 我只是问问而已。只是 … 而已 = just …, nothing more.

27. 请将手机关闭。将 replaces 把 in notices and formal writing.

28. 要不是 imagines the opposite: you reminded me, so I was not late. Without your reminder, I would have been.

29. Model answer. 多亏你帮我找，我的包才找到了。我只是提了个建议而已。

Review later. Tomorrow, thank someone with 多亏 and imagine the opposite with 要不是.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Verbs & comparisons

HSK 5

Three ways to compare (不像 …… 那么, 比起 …… 来, 不如) and three verb patterns (Verb + 什么 as a complaint, noun/adjective + 化, 算 + adjective + 的). 不如 and 不像 …… 那么 both say "not as … as", but 不如 often means "not as good as" on its own.

At a glance

Comparing

- **1.** 不像 … 那么 … – not as … as: 我不像我哥哥那么高。
- **2.** 比起 … 来 – compared with: 比起去年，今年好多了。
- **3.** A 不如 B – not as good as: 等车不如走路。

Verbs that judge and change

- **4.** Verb + 什么 – a rebuke: 笑什么笑!
- **5.** Noun / Adj + 化 – -ize / -ify: 这座城市越来越现代化了。
- **6.** 算 + Adj + 的 – counts as / considered: 他在我们班算高的。

1. 不像 ... 那么 ... (not as ... as)

Form: A + 不像 + B + 那么 / 这么 + adjective

- **我不像他那么高。** *Wǒ bú xiàng tā nàme gāo.* – I'm not as tall as him.
- **这杯茶不像那杯那么热。** – This tea isn't as hot as that one.
- **今年冬天不像去年这么冷。** – This winter isn't as cold as last.

How it works. B is the standard, and A doesn't reach B's degree of the adjective. 那么 points to something further away, 这么 to something close or present. The pattern gives no number: 170 cm vs 180 cm makes a 10 cm gap, which comes from the measurements.

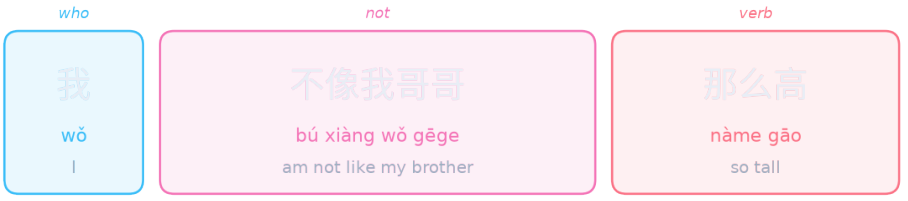
Follow the adjective. 我不像他那么高 means I'm shorter; 我不像他那么矮 means I'm taller. 我不像他 alone says "I'm not like him", and names no quality.

我不像他那么高	我没有他高	他比我高
not as tall as him	not as tall as him (most common)	he's taller

Watch out

- The comparison covers one quality only, not speed, grades or character.

A 不像 B 那么 …: A is not as … as B



2. 比起 … 来 (compared with)

Form: 比起 + B (+ 来)，A + comment

- **比起去年，今年好多了。** *Bǐqǐ qùnián, jīnnián hǎo duō le.* – Compared with last year, this year is much better.
- **比起去年，今年提高了十五分。** – Compared with last year, this year's score rose by 15 points.
- **比起开车，我更喜欢坐地铁。** – I'd rather take the metro than drive.

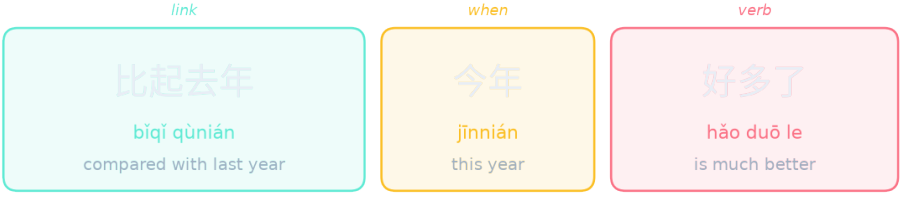
How it works. 比起 *bǐqǐ* introduces the baseline B first; the comment then evaluates A against it. 来 is optional (比起去年来). The comment sets the direction: 好多了, 低十五分 and 更喜欢 are all possible.

Numbers come from data. With 60 last year and 75 this year: 比起去年，今年提高了十五分; or, swapping the baseline, 比起今年，去年低十五分. 好多了 alone gives no number.

Watch out

- 比起 doesn't mean "better"; read the comment.
- A preference (更喜欢坐地铁) is not a claim that it's cheaper or faster.

比起 B，A …: compared with B, A is …



3. A 不如 B (not as good as)

Form: A + 不如 + B (+ adjective) · 不如 + action + 吧 (might as well)

- **这个不如那个好。** *Zhège bùrú nàge hǎo.* – This one isn't as good as that one.
- **这家店不如那家店便宜。** – This shop isn't as cheap as that one.
- **车太慢了，不如走路吧。** – The bus is so slow, we might as well walk.
- **不如在家做饭吧。** – Why don't we just cook at home?

How it works. In a comparison, A falls short of B. With no adjective, the comparison means "not as good" (我的中文不如他). As a suggestion, 不如 + action proposes a better option than the current plan, often with 吧.

不如走路吧	还是走路吧	要不走路吧
might as well walk (better than this)	had better walk (after weighing)	how about walking

Watch out

- The comparison names one quality only: cheaper isn't better service.
- A suggestion can be refused: 我太累了，还是等车吧.



4. Verb + 什么 (a rebuke)

Form: verb + 什么 (+ verb)! (a rebuke) · 你 + verb/adj + 什么?

- **看什么看！** *Kàn shénme kàn!* – What are you staring at?!
- **笑什么笑！** – What's so funny?!
- **你急什么？时间还早。** – What's the hurry? There's plenty of time.

How it works. In speech, verb + 什么 can object to an action instead of asking for information: stop doing that, or there's no need. The repeated form (看什么看) is sharp and rude. 你急什么 can be gentle reassurance; tone and situation decide.

Rebuke	Real question
看什么看！	你想看什么？(what to watch)
笑什么笑！	你在笑什么？(asking why)

Watch out

- Not every verb + 什么 is a rebuke; to ask for information, add an object or 想 / 在 (你想看什么书？).
- The repeated rebuke is impolite: don't use it with teachers or strangers.



5. Noun / Adj + 化 (-ize / -ify)

Form: adjective / noun + 化 → "make … / become …" (-ize, -ify)

- **流程简化了。** *Liúchéng jiǎnhuà le.* – The process has been simplified.
- **我们要美化环境。** – We want to make the surroundings more attractive.
- **这个城市现代化了。** – The city has modernised.

How it works. 化 *huà* turns a quality or noun into a change: 简 simple → 简化 simplify; 美 beautiful → 美化 beautify; 现代 modern → 现代化 modernise. The words can be verbs (简化流程) or nouns (实现现代化). Learn the established words; don't add 化 to any adjective (*wrong:* 好化, *wrong:* 高化).

Word	Meaning	Common phrase
简化	simplify	简化手续
美化	beautify	美化校园
现代化	modernise	农业现代化
国际化	internationalise	国际化的学校

Watch out

- A change word says what kind of change, not how much: six steps to four removes 2 steps, and the minutes saved need data.



6. 算 + Adj + 的 (counts as / considered)

Form: subject + (在 group 里) + 算 + adjective (+ 的)

- **他在班里算高的。** *Tā zài bān li suàn gāo de.* – He counts as tall in his class.
- **这算便宜。** – That's considered cheap.
- **今天算比较暖和的。** – Today is fairly warm, by comparison.

How it works. 算 *suàn* places something in a category by a judgement: it "counts as" tall or cheap compared with a reference group or standard. 算 + adjective + 的 is the common spoken form; 算 + adjective alone also works. 算是 is similar.

A category is not first place. In a class of 168, 175 and 182 cm, both 175 and 182 can 算高的; only 182 is 最高. In a basketball team, the same student might not count as tall; his height hasn't changed, the reference has.

这算便宜	算一下三加二
judged as cheap	calculate (算 = count)

Watch out

- 算高的 is not 最高.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ **1. 不像 … 那么 … (not as … as)**

1. I'm not as tall as him. 我不像他 …… 高。

2. 我不像他那么矮 means…

- A. I'm shorter
- B. I'm taller
- C. we're the same
- D. I'm not like him at all

3. Which is the most common way to say "A isn't as tall as B"?

- A. A 不比 B 高
- B. A 比 B 不高
- C. A 没有 B 高
- D. A 不像 B

4. True or false? 我不像他那么高 tells us the height difference. If false, correct it.

5. Say in Chinese: “This winter isn’t as cold as last year.”

6. This tea isn’t as hot as that one.

Put in order: 那么 / 不像 / 那杯 / 热。/ 这杯茶

■ 2. 比起 … 来 (compared with)

7. Compared with last year, this year is much better. …… 去年，今年好多了。

8. Last year’s score was 60, this year’s 75. Which is right?

- A. 比起去年，今年一样。
- B. 比起去年，今年低十五分。
- C. 比起去年，今年提高了十五分。
- D. 比起今年，去年高十五分。

9. In 比起开车，我更喜欢坐地铁, what is the baseline?

- A. me
- B. the metro
- C. the city
- D. driving

10. True or false? 比起 always means “better than”. If false, correct it.

11. Say in Chinese: “Compared with Beijing, Shanghai is warmer.”

12. Compared with before, he is much more confident.

Put in order: 多了。/ 自信 / 比起 / 他 / 以前，

■ 3. A 不如 B (not as good as)

13. The bus is so slow, we might as well walk. 车太慢了，…… 走路吧。

14. 这家店不如那家店便宜 means…

- A. that shop is cheaper
- B. this shop is cheaper
- C. neither is cheap
- D. both are cheap

15. Which means “My Chinese isn’t as good as his”?

- A. 我的中文如不他。
- B. 不如我的中文他。
- C. 我的中文不比他。
- D. 我的中文不如他。

16. True or false? 不如走路吧 means everyone has agreed to walk. If false, correct it.

17. Say in Chinese: “Why don’t we just cook at home?”

18. Waiting here is not as good as going to look for him.

Put in order: 在这儿等 / 找他。/ 不如 / 去

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 4. Verb + 什么 (a rebuke)

19. Someone is staring at you rudely. Which do you snap?

- A. 你想看什么?
- B. 你在看什么书?
- C. 看看吧。
- D. 看什么看!

20. 你急什么? 时间还早。What is the speaker doing?

- A. asking what you want
- B. asking for the time
- C. complaining about you
- D. telling you there's no need to hurry

21. Which is a real question about laughing?

- A. 笑什么!
- B. 别笑!
- C. 你在笑什么?
- D. 笑什么笑!

22. True or false? 看什么看 is fine to say to your teacher. If false, correct it.

23. Ask politely which film your friend wants to see.

24. Tell a friend gently that there's no need to worry: 你担心 ……? 没事的。

■ 5. Noun / Adj + 化 (-ize / -ify)

25. The process has been simplified. 流程 …… 了。

26. What does 美化校园 mean?

- A. buy a campus
- B. American campus
- C. a beautiful campus
- D. make the campus more beautiful

27. Which word is NOT a real 化 word?

- A. 国际化
- B. 简化
- C. 好化
- D. 现代化

28. True or false? 简化流程 tells you how many minutes are saved. If false, correct it.

29. Say in Chinese: "This city has modernised."

30. We should simplify the procedures.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Put in order: 手续。/ 我们 / 简化 / 应该

■ 6. 算 + Adj + 的 (counts as / considered)

31. He counts as tall in his class. 他在班里 …… 高的。

32. In a class of 168, 175 and 182 cm, can 175 算高的?

- A. Yes, a category isn't first place
- B. Never
- C. No, only the tallest counts
- D. Only if he is the tallest

33. In which sentence does 算 mean "calculate"?

- A. 他算高的。
- B. 这算便宜。
- C. 今天算暖和。
- D. 你算一下一共多少钱。

34. True or false? 他算高的 means he is the tallest. If false, correct it.

35. Say in Chinese: "For Beijing, today counts as warm."

36. This price counts as cheap.

Put in order: 价格 / 这个 / 算 / 便宜的。

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

37. Choose 不如 or 比起 …… 来: 坐火车 …… 坐飞机快。/ …… 去年 ……，今年冷多了。

38. What does 你哭什么? mean?

39. Say "His Chinese counts as quite good."

40. Find and fix the problem. A sentence says A 不如 B 方便. A classmate says B is less convenient. Which is right?

41. Use it yourself. Say that compared with last year, this year is much colder, and that taking the bus is not as fast as the metro.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 不像 ... 那么 ... (not as ... as)

1. 那么

A 不像 B 那么 + adjective.

2. B. I'm taller

Follow the adjective: not as short = taller.

3. C. A 没有 B 高

没有 is the everyday form.

4. False.

It gives no number.

5. 今年冬天不像去年这么冷。/ 今年冬天没有去年冷。

A 不像 B 这么 / 那么 + adjective.

6. 这杯茶不像那杯那么热。

A + 不像 + B + 那么 + adj.

■ 2. 比起 ... 来 (compared with)

7. 比起

比起 + baseline.

8. C. 比起去年，今年提高了十五分。

75 − 60 = 15, higher this year.

9. D. driving

The baseline follows 比起.

10. False.

The comment sets the direction: 低, 差 and 少 are possible.

11. 比起北京，上海暖和一些。

比起 + B, then A + comment.

12. 比起以前，他自信多了。

Baseline first.

■ 3. A 不如 B (not as good as)

13. 不如

不如 + action + 吧: a better option.

14. A. that shop is cheaper

A 不如 B + adj: B is more so.

15. D. 我的中文不如他。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

With no adjective, 不如 means not as good.

16. False.

It is a suggestion; it can be refused.

17. 不如在家做饭吧。

不如 + action + 吧.

18. 在这儿等不如去找他。

A 不如 B.

■ 4. Verb + 什么 (a rebuke)

19. D. 看什么看!

The repeated verb + 什么 + verb is a rebuke.

20. D. telling you there's no need to hurry

Verb/adj + 什么 can mean "no need to".

21. C. 你在笑什么?

Add 在 or an object to ask for information.

22. False.

The repeated rebuke is rude.

23. 你想看什么电影?

想 + verb + 什么 + noun asks for information.

24. 什么

你 + verb + 什么 = no need to.

■ 5. Noun / Adj + 化 (-ize / -ify)

25. 简化

简 + 化 = simplify.

26. D. make the campus more beautiful

美化 = beautify.

27. C. 好化

Learn the established words; 化 doesn't join every adjective.

28. False.

It names the kind of change, not the amount.

29. 这个城市现代化了。

现代化 as a verb with 了.

30. 我们应该简化手续。

简化 + object.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 6. 算 + Adj + 的 (counts as / considered)

31. 算

算 + adj (+ 的): counts as.

32. A. Yes, a category isn't first place

算高的 is not 最高.

33. D. 你算一下一共多少钱。

算一下 = work it out.

34. False.

It places him in the tall group.

35. 在北京，今天算暖和的。

算 + adj + 的, with a reference.

36. 这个价格算便宜的。

算 + adjective + 的.

■ Mixed practice

37. 坐火车不如坐飞机快。比起去年来，今年冷多了。

38. "What are you crying for?": Verb + 什么 is a complaint, not a real question.

39. 他的中文算比较好的。算 + adjective + 的 = can be considered.

40. A 不如 B means A is not as good as B: B is more convenient.

41. Model answer. 比起去年来，今年冷多了。坐公共汽车不如坐地铁快。

Review later. Tomorrow, compare two places with 不像 …… 那么 …….

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Auxiliary verbs

HSK 5

将, 将要 and 将会 are the formal future: "will, is going to". You will meet them in news, notices and speeches: 会议将在明天举行. In conversation, use 会 or 要 instead.

将 / 将要 / 将会 (formal future)

Form: subject + 将 / 将要 / 将会 + (time) + verb phrase

- **会议将在明天举行。** *Huìyì jiāng zài míngtiān jǔxíng.* – The meeting will be held tomorrow.
- **学校将会公布结果。** *Xuéxiào jiāng huì gōngbù jiéguǒ.* – The school will announce the results.
- **新图书馆将要开放。** *Xīn túshūguǎn jiāngyào kāifàng.* – The new library is about to open.
- **本次列车将于十点三十分到达北京。** *Běn cì lièchē jiāng yú shí diǎn sānshí fēn dàodá Běijīng.* – This train will arrive in Beijing at 10:30.
- **明天全市将有大雨。** *Míngtiān quán shì jiāng yǒu dà yǔ.* – There will be heavy rain across the city tomorrow.
- **这项新规定将从下个月开始实行。** *Zhè xiàng xīn guīdìng jiāng cóng xià ge yuè kāishǐ shíxíng.* – This new rule will take effect from next month.

How it works. 将 *jiāng* is the formal "will" of notices, news, announcements and speeches. It goes after the subject and before the time phrase or verb, and often meets the formal 于 ("at, on"): 将于周五举行. 将要 suggests something coming soon ("is about to"); 将会 stresses that it is expected to happen. All three describe a plan or forecast, so the event has *not* happened yet.

In conversation the same idea is 要 or 会: 我们明天要开会, 明天会下雨. Using 将 with friends sounds like reading the news. You also meet a different 将 in writing, where it means 把 and an object follows it: 请将门关上 = 请把门关上.

会议将在明天举行。	请将门关上。	会议已经举行了。
future "will" (a verb or time follows)	= 把 (an object follows)	already held
formal notice	formal instruction	a report of the past

Watch out

- An announcement is a plan, not a report: 系统将于周五更新 means the update has not happened yet.
- 将 goes after the subject: *wrong:* 将会议在明天举行 → 会议将在明天举行.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- Do not add 了 to a 将 sentence about the future: *wrong:* 比赛将开始了 → 比赛将开始 (or spoken 比赛要开始了).

In a passage

> 各位同学请注意：本学期的运动会将于十月十五日举行，比赛将从上午八点开始。各班将要在九月底前交报名表。如果下雨，运动会将会改到下一周。具体安排将在学校网站上公布。

Read and notice. List four things the notice says will happen. Then say one of them as you would tell a friend, with 要 or 会.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. The meeting will be held tomorrow. 会议 …… 在明天举行。

2. Which is the everyday way to say 我们将开会?

- A. 我们被开会。
- B. 我们开会将。
- C. 我们要开会。
- D. 我们把开会。

3. In which sentence does 将 mean 把?

- A. 新馆将要开放。
- B. 会议将举行。
- C. 学校将公布结果。
- D. 请将门关上。

4. True or false? 会议将在明天举行 means the meeting has already been held. If false, correct it.

5. Say in formal style: “The new library will open next month.”

6. The school will announce the results.

Put in order: 公布 / 学校 / 结果。 / 将会

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

7. Find and fix the problem. A notice says 系统将于周五更新. A classmate thinks the update has already happened. Correct it.

8. Use it yourself. Write a formal notice: the library will be closed next Monday.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 将

Formal future 将.

2. C. 我们要开会。

In speech, 要 / 会.

3. D. 请将门关上。

将 + object + verb = 把.

4. False.

It announces a future event.

5. 新图书馆将在下个月开放。

将 + time + verb.

6. 学校将会公布结果。

将会 + verb phrase.

■ Mixed practice

7. 将 is a formal future: the system will be updated on Friday.

8. Model answer. 图书馆将于下周一关闭。

Review later. Tomorrow, rewrite one spoken plan (我们会 ……) as a formal notice with 将.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Verb phrases

HSK 5

Two verb patterns about things that happen to you. 难免 says something is hard to avoid (第一次难免紧张); 受 means "receive" or "be affected by" (受欢迎, 受影响). Both describe a result you do not fully control.

At a glance

- **1.** 难免 – hard to avoid / bound to: 新手难免出错。
- **2.** 受 – receive / be affected: 李老师很受欢迎。

1. 难免 (hard to avoid / bound to)

Form: (situation，) (subject) + 难免 + (会) + result

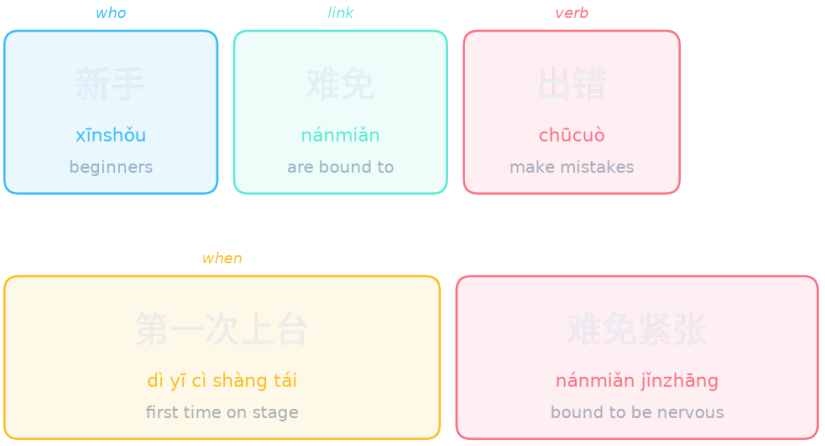
- **新手难免出错。***Xīnshǒu nánmiǎn chūcuò.* – Beginners are bound to make mistakes.
- **第一次上台，难免紧张。** – Your first time on stage, it's natural to be nervous.
- **路上车很多，难免会晚一点。** – With so much traffic, we'll inevitably be a bit late.

How it works. 难免 *nánmiǎn* says that, in the circumstances, a (usually unwelcome) result is hard to avoid. Often it reassures or excuses, and the situation supplies the reason (第一次, 车很多). It gives no number: if 3 of 12 beginners make a mistake, 9 didn't.

Watch out

- "Hard to avoid" doesn't mean "leave it": 新手难免出错，请检查并改正.
- The reason belongs to its situation: a quiet route needs its own judgement.
- 难免 is not 一定 "certainly": 难免紧张 doesn't predict that everyone will be nervous.

难免: bound to happen



2. 受 (receive / be affected)

Form: subject + (很) + 受 + 欢迎 / 影响 / 伤 … · A + 受 + B + 欢迎 / 影响

- **这位老师很受欢迎。** *Zhè wèi lǎoshī hěn shòu huānyíng.* – This teacher is very popular.
- **比赛受天气影响。** – The match was affected by the weather.
- **他受伤了。** – He got hurt.

How it works. 受 *shòu* "receive, undergo": the subject is on the receiving end, and the result can be good or bad. The source can sit between 受 and the noun: 老师受学生欢迎 (students welcome the teacher). Learn the fixed phrases; 受 can't replace 被 before any verb.

Phrase	Meaning
受欢迎	popular, well received
受影响	be affected
受伤	be injured
受到批评 / 表扬	be criticised / praised

Watch out

- 受天气影响 says the match was affected, not that it was cancelled.
- 受伤 names no cause or attacker. If 3 of 8 players were injured, 5 weren't reported injured.

受: receive, be affected by



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 难免 (hard to avoid / bound to)

1. Beginners are bound to make mistakes. 新手 …… 出错。

2. Choose the best ending: 第一次上台，……

- A. 难免我。
- B. 难免紧张。
- C. 难免很好。
- D. 难免明天。

3. 路上车很多，难免会晚一点 means…

- A. some lateness is hard to avoid
- B. we are never late
- C. we will be exactly 10 minutes late
- D. the road is empty

4. True or false? 难免出错 means you don't need to correct the mistakes. If false, correct it.

5. Say in Chinese: "Living abroad, it's natural to miss home."

6. People inevitably make mistakes.

Put in order: 人 / 犯错。 / 难免 / 会

■ 2. 受 (receive / be affected)

7. This teacher is very popular. 这位老师很 …… 欢迎。

8. 比赛受天气影响 means…

- A. the match was cancelled
- B. the match was good
- C. the weather affected the match
- D. the match affected the weather

9. Which phrase means “be injured”?

- A. 受影响
- B. 受欢迎
- C. 受表扬
- D. 受伤

10. True or false? 受 can replace 被 before any verb. If false, correct it.

11. Say in Chinese: “He was praised by the teacher.”

12. This book is popular with young people.

Put in order: 欢迎。 / 很受 / 年轻人 / 这本书

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

13. Choose 难免 or 受: 刚开始学，…… 会犯错误。 / 这本书很 …… 欢迎。

14. Find and fix the problem. A classmate reads 难免会出错 as “you will certainly fail every time.” Correct it.

15. Use it yourself. Say the match was affected by the weather, and that mistakes are hard to avoid the first time.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 难免 (hard to avoid / bound to)

1. 难免

难免: hard to avoid in the circumstances.

2. B. 难免紧张。

难免 + (usually unwelcome) result.

3. A. some lateness is hard to avoid

难免 gives no number.

4. False.

Hard to avoid doesn't mean leave it.

5. 在国外生活，难免会想家。

Situation，难免 + result.

6. 人难免会犯错。

难免 + (会) + result.

■ 2. 受 (receive / be affected)

7. 受

受欢迎 = popular.

8. C. the weather affected the match

受影响 = be affected.

9. D. 受伤

受伤 names no cause.

10. False.

Learn the fixed phrases.

11. 他受到了老师的表扬。

受到 + noun.

12. 这本书很受年轻人欢迎。

A 受 B 欢迎.

■ Mixed practice

13. 刚开始学，难免会犯错误。这本书很受欢迎。

14. 难免 means a mistake is hard to avoid, so some mistakes are normal. It does not say every attempt fails.

15. Model answer. 比赛受了天气的影响。第一次做难免会出错，多检查就好了。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one sentence with 受欢迎 and one with 难免.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

”But” statements

HSK 5

反而 means “instead, on the contrary”: the result is the opposite of what you would expect. It goes before the verb, and often follows 不但不/没: 他不但没生气，反而笑了.

反而 (on the contrary / instead)

Form: subject + 反而 + predicate · (subject) 不但不 / 没 ……，反而 ……

- **我解释了半天，他反而更糊涂了。** *Wǒ jiěshìle bàntiān, tā fǎn'ér gèng hútu le.* – I explained for ages, and he only got more confused.
- **他不但没生气，反而笑了。** *Tā búdàn méi shēngqì, fǎn'ér xiào le.* – Far from getting angry, he actually laughed.
- **吃了药，病反而更重了。** *Chīle yào, bìng fǎn'ér gèng zhòng le.* – After taking the medicine, the illness actually got worse.
- **雨不但没停，反而越下越大。** *Yǔ búdàn méi tíng, fǎn'ér yuè xià yuè dà.* – Far from stopping, the rain got heavier and heavier.
- **我以为坐出租车会快一点儿，没想到反而更慢了。** *Wǒ yǐwéi zuò chūzūchē huì kuài yìdiǎnr, méi xiǎngdào fǎn'ér gèng màn le.* – I thought a taxi would be quicker, but it turned out even slower.
- **老师批评了他，他反而更努力了。** *Lǎoshī pīpíngle tā, tā fǎn'ér gèng nǔlì le.* – The teacher criticised him, and instead of giving up he worked even harder.

How it works. 反而 *fǎn'ér* “instead, on the contrary” marks a result that goes *against* what was expected or intended. The expectation comes first, either stated (我以为 ……) or obvious from the situation: explaining should help, medicine should cure, a taxi should be faster. Then 反而 introduces the surprising opposite.

With 不但不 / 不但没, the first half rules out the expected reaction and the second half gives the opposite: 他不但没生气，反而笑了. 更 often follows 反而, because the result is “even more” of the unexpected thing.

反而	但是 / 却	相反
goes against an expectation; adverb after the subject	a plain contrast between two facts	“on the contrary”; can start a sentence
我解释了，他反而更糊涂了。	他很聪明， 但是不努力。	他没生气，相反， 他很高兴。

Watch out

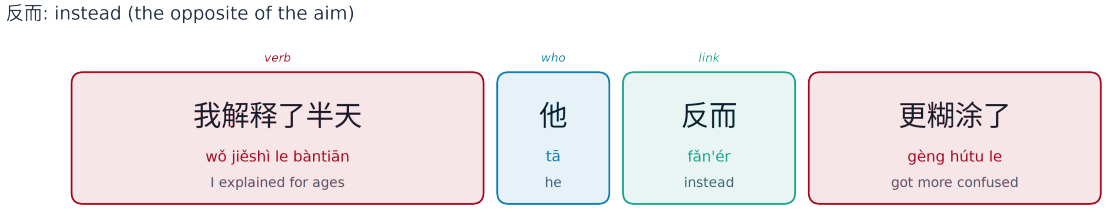
- 反而 is an adverb, so it goes after the subject: *wrong:* 反而他笑了 → 他反而笑了.
- It needs an expectation to go against; a plain contrast takes 可是 or 但是: *wrong:* 我很累，反而我去打球了 → 我很累，可是还是去打球了.

- Pair 不但 with 没 / 不 here, not with 而且: *wrong:* 他不但没生气，而且笑了 → 他不但没生气，反而笑了.

In a passage

> 为了减肥，小张每天只吃一顿饭。可是一个月以后，他不但没瘦，反而胖了两公斤。医生告诉他，饿得太厉害，晚上反而容易吃得更多。后来他改成按时吃饭、多运动，体重才慢慢降下来。

Read and notice. What did 小张 expect, and what happened instead? Find both 反而 sentences.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Complete: “After the rain, it got hotter instead.” 下了雨，天气 …… 更热了。

2. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他没哭反而，笑了。
- B. 他反而不但没哭，笑了。
- C. 他不但没哭，反而笑了。
- D. 他笑了反而。

3. Build: “Far from getting angry, he actually laughed.”

Put in order: ， / 反而 / 他不但没生气 / 笑了。

4. True or false? 相反 can open a sentence followed by a comma. If false, correct it.

5. You tried to help your little brother with maths, but he got more confused. Use 反而. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Fill in 反而 or 而且: 我以为他会生气，可是他不但没生气，…… 笑了。

7. Join with 反而: I took medicine / my cold got worse.

8. Find and fix the problem. A classmate writes 我很累，反而我去打球了 to add a second fact. Why does 反而 not fit?

9. Use it yourself. Describe something you expected to be hard that helped you instead.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 反而

反而 marks the opposite of what you'd expect.

2. C. 他不但没哭，反而笑了。

不但没 …，反而 … with 反而 after the (omitted) subject.

3. 他不但没生气，反而笑了。

不但没 …，反而 ….

4. True.

True. 相反 can open a sentence, followed by a comma, to mean "on the contrary": 他没生气，相反，他很高兴.

5. Model answer: 我解释了半天，他反而更糊涂了。

Check your answer:

- 反而 is an adverb: 雨反而更大了 is the usual order.
- It needs an expectation to go against; for a plain contrast use 但是 / 却.

■ Mixed practice

6. 反而. 我以为 sets up an expectation, and the result is the opposite; 而且 only adds more of the same.

7. 我吃了药，感冒反而更厉害了。反而 goes before the verb phrase, after the subject.

8. 反而 needs a result opposite to what was expected, and it goes after the subject: 我以为休息会好一点，反而更累了.

9. Model answer. 我以为这本书很难，没想到它反而帮我更明白了。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one 不但没 …… 反而 …… sentence.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

”Even if” statements

HSK 5

Three ways to say “even if”, all followed by 也. 就是 and 就算 are spoken; 哪怕 stresses an extreme or unlikely case: 哪怕只有一分钟，我也要试试. The first half is something that might happen; the second says the result will not change.

At a glance

- **1.** 就是 … ，也 … – even if: 就是下雨，我也去。
- **2.** 就算 … ，也 … – even if: 就算输了，也值得。
- **3.** 哪怕 … ，也 … – even if: 哪怕只有五分钟，我也要练。

1. 就是 … ，也 … (even if)

Form: 就是 + possible case，subject + 也 + decision

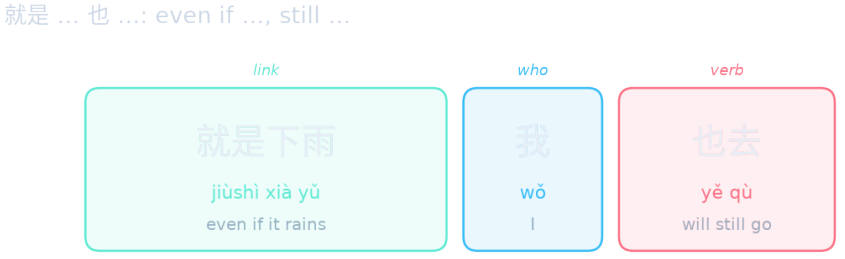
- **就是下雨，我也去。** *Jiùshì xià yǔ, wǒ yě qù.* – Even if it rains, I’m going.
- **就是再忙，他也每天给家里打电话。** – However busy he is, he calls home every day.
- **就是你不说，我也知道。** – Even if you don’t tell me, I know.

How it works. In this spoken pattern, 就是 “even if” grants a case and 也 keeps the decision anyway. It is more colloquial than 即使.

就是下雨，我也去	假如下雨，我就不去	这就是我的书
even if: the plan survives	if: the plan changes	“exactly is” (identifies)

Watch out

- Read both clauses: 就是 alone doesn’t mean “even if”, and 也 is what shows the concession.
- The sentence states an intention; rain isn’t confirmed, and the speaker hasn’t arrived yet.



2. 就算 … ，也 … (even if)

Form: 就算 + granted case，(subject) + 也 + conclusion

- **就算失败，也值得。** *Jiùsuàn shībài, yě zhídé.* – Even if it fails, it's worth it.
- **就算这个办法便宜，也不一定适合我们。** – Even if this method is cheap, it may not suit us.
- **就算你不同意，我也要试试。** – Even if you don't agree, I'm going to try.

How it works. 就算 *jiùsuàn* is a spoken "even if / even granted that". It grants a point (imagined, or already known) and keeps the conclusion. The granted point can be good news as well as bad: 就算便宜 grants the low price, then questions whether that is enough.

Spoken	Neutral / written
就是 …… 也 · 就算 …… 也	即使 …… 也 · 哪怕 …… 也

Watch out

- 就算失败 doesn't say it **will** fail.
- One view doesn't override other rules: 也值得 doesn't permit breaking an agreed budget.



3. 哪怕 … ，也 … (even if)

Form: 哪怕 + extreme / minimal case，(subject) + 也 + conclusion

- **哪怕再难，我也要学。** *Nǎpà zài nán, wǒ yě yào xué.* – However hard it is, I'm going to learn it.
- **哪怕只有五分钟，我也要练习。** – Even if I only have five minutes, I'll practise.
- **哪怕只有一点希望，我们也要试一试。** – Even with only a little hope, we must give it a try.

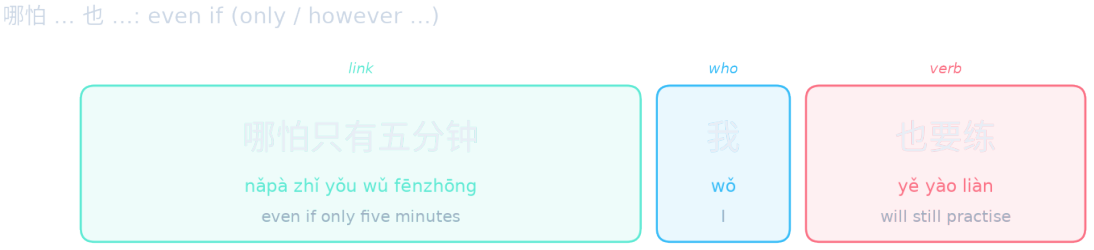
How it works. 哪怕 *nǎpà* pushes the case to an extreme (再难 "however hard") or a minimum (只有五分钟, 一点希望). The conclusion holds anyway, and it often expresses strong determination. 再 + adjective here means "however …", not "again".

Follow the conclusion. 也 doesn't make it positive: **哪怕有空，我也不去** means I won't go, even with free time.

Case conceded	Example
extreme difficulty	哪怕再难
tiny amount	哪怕只有五分钟
a little hope	哪怕只有一点希望 (not "no hope")

Watch out

- An intention isn't success: 我也要学 doesn't say it's been mastered.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 就是 … ，也 … (even if)

1. Even if it rains, I'm going. 就是下雨，我 …… 去。

2. Which sentence changes the plan if it rains?

- A. 哪怕下雨，我也去。
- B. 就是下雨，我也去。
- C. 就算下雨，我也去。
- D. 假如下雨，我就不去。

3. In 这就是我的书, 就是 means…

- A. exactly is
- B. although
- C. even if
- D. then

4. True or false? 就是 sounds more formal than 即使. If false, correct it.

5. Say in Chinese: "However busy he is, he calls home every day."

6. Even if you don't tell me, I know.

Put in order: 我 / 知道。/ 你不说，/ 也 / 就是

■ 2. 就算 ... ，也 ... (even if)

7. Even if it fails, it's worth it. …… 失败，也值得。

8. Choose the best ending: 就算这个办法便宜，……

- A. 也不一定适合我们。
- B. 因为便宜。
- C. 就很好。
- D. 所以我们用吧。

9. Which is closest in meaning to 就算?

- A. 如果
- B. 所以
- C. 即使
- D. 因为

10. True or false? 就算失败 says the attempt will fail. If false, correct it.

11. Say in Chinese: "Even if you don't agree, I'm going to try."

12. Even if it's expensive, I'll buy it.

Put in order: 也 / 我 / 很贵，/ 要买。/ 就算

■ 3. 哪怕 ... ，也 ... (even if)

13. However hard it is, I'm going to learn it. 哪怕再难，我 …… 要学。

14. 哪怕有空，我也不去 means…

- A. I'll go anyway
- B. I'm not free
- C. I won't go even if I'm free
- D. I'll go if I'm free

15. In 哪怕再难, 再 means…

- A. then
- B. again
- C. still
- D. however (much more)

16. True or false? 哪怕只有五分钟 concedes a tiny amount of time. If false, correct it.

17. Say in Chinese: "Even with only a little hope, we must try."

18. Even if I have only five minutes, I'll practise.

Put in order: 我 / 哪怕 / 也要练习。/ 五分钟，/ 只有

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

19. Choose the best word: …… 只有一个人支持我，我也要做下去。(stressing an extreme case)

20. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 就算下雨，我们就去。
- B. 就算下雨，我们也去。
- C. 就算下雨，所以我们去。

21. Choose 哪怕 or 不管: …… 多累，他都坚持跑步。/ …… 只睡三个小时，他也坚持跑步。

22. Find and fix the problem. A classmate writes 哪怕下雨，我们就去. Correct it.

23. Use it yourself. Say you will keep your promise even if it takes more time.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 就是 … ，也 … (even if)

1. 也

就是 …… 也: the decision survives.

2. D. 假如下雨，我就不去。

假如 = if; the others mean even if.

3. A. exactly is

Without a 也 clause, 就是 often identifies.

4. False.

就是 is colloquial; 即使 is more neutral and written.

5. 就是再忙，他也每天给家里打电话。

就是 + case，也 + decision.

6. 就是你不说，我也知道。

就是 + case，subject + 也.

■ 2. 就算 … ，也 … (even if)

7. 就算

就算 grants a case.

8. A. 也不一定适合我们。

就算 grants the point, then keeps the conclusion.

9. C. 即使

Both mean even if.

10. False.

It only grants the possibility.

11. 就算你不同意，我也要试试。

就算 + case，也 + conclusion.

12. 就算很贵，我也要买。

就算 …… 也 …….

■ 3. 哪怕 … ，也 … (even if)

13. 也

哪怕 …… 也.

14. C. I won't go even if I'm free

也 doesn't make the conclusion positive.

15. D. however (much more)

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

哪怕 + 再 + adj = however …

16. True.

哪怕 can push to a minimum.

17. 哪怕只有一点希望，我们也要试一试。

哪怕 + minimal case，也 + conclusion.

18. 哪怕只有五分钟，我也要练习。

哪怕 + case，也 + intention.

■ Mixed practice

19. 哪怕只有一个人支持我，我也要做下去。哪怕 stresses an extreme case; 就算 or 就是 would also be correct but less strong.

20. B. 就算/就是/哪怕 always pair with 也.

21. 不管多累 (every case, with a question word) + 都；哪怕只睡三个小时 (one extreme case) + 也.

22. 哪怕 pairs with 也: 哪怕下雨，我们也去.

23. Model answer. 哪怕要多花一些时间，我也会做到。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one sentence each with 就是, 就算 and 哪怕.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

”If” statements

HSK 5

Three ways to talk about possibilities. 假如 …… 就 …… is a formal “supposing”; 万一 is for an unlikely, unwelcome event (“what if …?”); and clause + 的话 adds “if” to any condition and often follows 如果 or 要是.

At a glance

- **1.** 假如 … ，就 … – if / supposing: 假如有机会，我就去南极看看。
- **2.** 万一 … 怎么办? – what if: 万一下雨怎么办?
- **3.** Clause + 的话 – if / conditional frame: 你去的话，叫我一声。

1. 假如 … ，就 … (if / supposing)

Form: 假如 + condition，(subject) + 就 + response

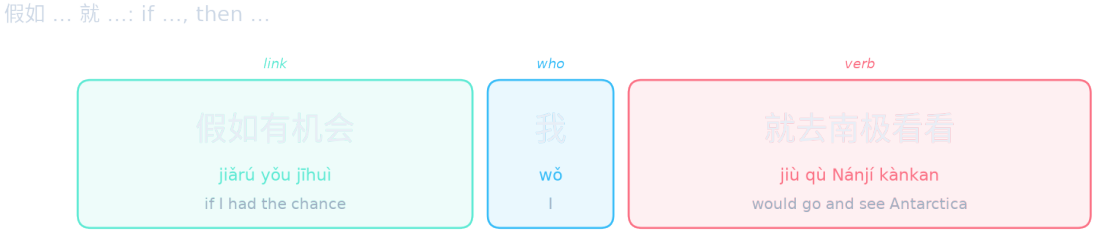
- **假如有机会，就去试试。** *Jiǎrú yǒu jīhuì, jiù qù shìshi.* – If you get the chance, give it a try.
- **假如明天有空，我们就去参观。** – If we’re free tomorrow, we’ll go on the visit.
- **假如你有空，我们一起去吧。** – If you’re free, let’s go together.

How it works. 假如 *jiǎrú* “if, supposing” is a slightly more written 如果. 就 often introduces the response but is not required. The condition is supposed, not reported: no place has been offered yet.

假如下雨，我就不去	就是下雨，我也去
if: rain changes the plan	even if: the plan stays

Watch out

- Check that new facts match the condition: “free today, busy tomorrow” does **not** meet 假如明天有空.
- A condition isn’t the only possible reason: 假如下雨，我就不去 doesn’t rule out others.



exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

2. 万一 … 怎么办? (what if)

Form: 万一 + possible problem (，) 怎么办? · 万一 + problem，(就) + plan

- **万一下雨怎么办?** *Wànyī xià yǔ zěnme bàn?* – What if it rains?
- **万一下雨，我们就去室内活动。** – If it does rain, we'll do something indoors.
- **万一我晚到了，你先进去吧。** – In case I'm late, go in first.

How it works. 万一 *wànyī* (literally "one in ten thousand") raises an unlikely but unwelcome possibility so you can prepare. With 怎么办 it asks for a backup plan; with a second clause it gives one. It is not a real probability.

万一	如果 / 假如
unlikely and unwanted case: "in case", "what if"	neutral "if"

Watch out

- Asking isn't forecasting: 万一下雨 doesn't say rain is expected, and 已经下雨了 reports that it has.
- A backup plan needs to work: an indoor room still has to be booked.



3. Clause + 的话 (if / conditional frame)

Form: (如果) + condition clause + 的话，response

- **你去的话，叫我一声。** *Nǐ qù dehuà, jiào wǒ yì shēng.* – If you go, let me know.
- **如果明天下雨的话，我们改天去。** – If it rains tomorrow, we'll go another day.
- **你不去的话，告诉我。** – If you're not going, tell me.

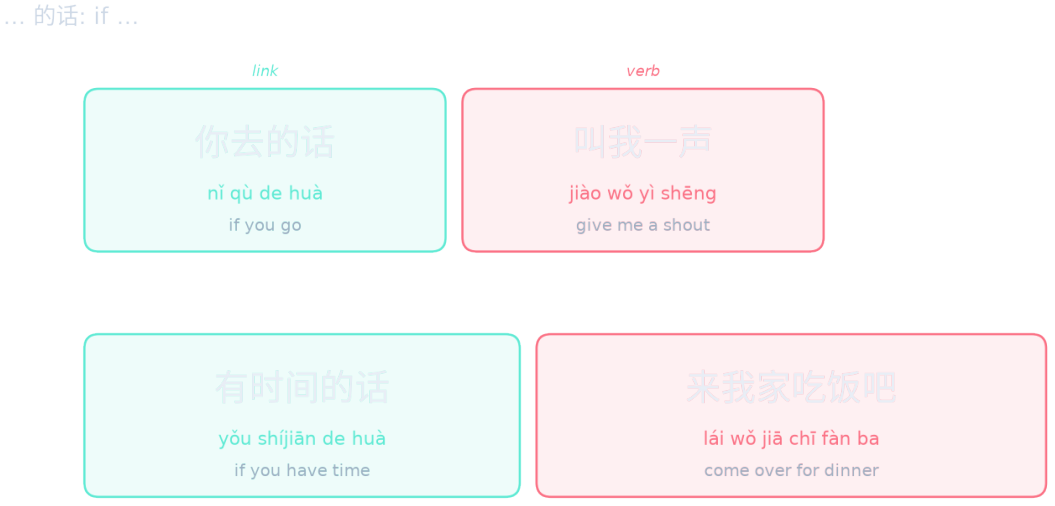
How it works. 的话 *dehuà* closes a condition. It can work alone (你去的话) or with

如果 / 要是 at the front. It is very common in speech. A 不 inside the condition stays there: 你不去的话 means “if you don’t go”.

你去的话	他的话	价格的话，……
if you go	his words	as for the price (topic)

Watch out

- 的话 doesn’t make a request polite: tone and wording do that.
- 他的话我听懂了 has no condition; 的 + 话 here means “his words”.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 假如 … ，就 … (if / supposing)

1. If you get the chance, give it a try. …… 有机会，就去试试。

2. Which word is closest to 假如?

- A. 因为
- B. 虽然
- C. 如果
- D. 就是

3. Plan: 假如明天有空，我们就去参观。News: free today, busy tomorrow. Do they go tomorrow?

- A. We can’t tell

- B. Yes
- C. No

4. True or false? Every 假如 sentence needs 就. If false, correct it.

5. Say in Chinese: “If it rains, we won’t go.”

6. If I were you, I’d accept.

Put in order: 假如 / 就 / 我 / 接受。/ 我是你,

■ 2. 万一 ... 怎么办? (what if)

7. What if it rains? …… 下雨怎么办?

8. 万一 is used for…

- A. a certain fact
- B. a past event
- C. an unlikely but unwelcome possibility
- D. a likely, welcome event

9. Choose the best reply to 万一下雨怎么办?

- A. 已经下雨了。
- B. 下雨很好。
- C. 万一下雨，我们就去室内活动。
- D. 万一是。

10. True or false? 万一我晚到了 means the speaker expects to be late. If false, correct it.

11. Say in Chinese: “Take an umbrella, just in case.”

12. In case I’m late, go in first.

Put in order: 我 / 晚到了，/ 你 / 先进去吧。/ 万一

■ 3. Clause + 的话 (if / conditional frame)

13. If you go, let me know. 你去 ……，叫我一声。

14. Which combination is correct?

- A. 如果你去吗
- B. 的话你去
- C. 你的话去
- D. 如果你去的话

15. In 他的话我听懂了, 的话 means…

- A. if
- B. as for
- C. because
- D. his words (的 + 话)

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

16. True or false? 你不去的话，告诉我 means "Don't tell me if you go." If false, correct it.

17. Say in Chinese: "If it rains tomorrow, we'll go another day."

18. If you have time, come round.

Put in order: 的话，/ 我家玩吧。/ 有空 / 来 / 你

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

19. Choose 假如 or 万一: …… 明天下雨怎么办？/ …… 我是你，我就去。

20. Add 的话: 你有时间，我们一起去吧。

21. Choose 万一 or 即使: …… 下雨呢？还是带把伞吧。/ …… 下雨，我们也要去。

22. Find and fix the problem. A group asks 万一火车晚点怎么办？ A classmate translates it as "The train is definitely late." Correct it.

23. Use it yourself. Give a plan in case the train is late, and the normal plan if it is on time.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 假如 … ，就 … (if / supposing)

1. 假如

假如 = if, supposing.

2. C. 如果

Both mean if.

3. C. No

The condition is about tomorrow.

4. False.

就 is common but optional: 假如你有空，我们一起去吧.

5. 假如下雨，我们就不去了。

假如 + condition，就 + response.

6. 假如我是你，我就接受。

假如 + condition，subject + 就.

■ 2. 万一 … 怎么办? (what if)

7. 万一

万一 + problem + 怎么办.

8. C. an unlikely but unwelcome possibility

“In case”, “what if”.

9. C. 万一下雨，我们就去室内活动。

A backup plan answers the question.

10. False.

It prepares for an unlikely problem.

11. 带把伞吧，万一下雨呢。

万一 + problem.

12. 万一我晚到了，你先进去吧。

万一 + problem, then the plan.

■ 3. Clause + 的话 (if / conditional frame)

13. 的话

Condition + 的话.

14. D. 如果你去的话

如果 and 的话 can work together.

15. D. his words (的 + 话)

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

No condition here.

16. False.

It means "If you don't go, tell me."

17. 如果明天下雨的话，我们改天去。

如果 …… 的话.

18. 你有空的话，来我家玩吧。

Condition + 的话, then the request.

■ Mixed practice

19. 万一明天下雨怎么办? (an unwelcome possibility)。假如我是你，我就去 (supposing).

20. 你有时间的话，我们一起去吧。的话 closes the condition.

21. 万一下雨呢 (an unwelcome chance, so take an umbrella)；即使下雨 …… 也 (even then, the plan stays).

22. 万一 means "in case, what if": the train might be late. The group is planning for an unlikely problem.

23. Model answer. 万一火车晚点，我们就坐出租车去。火车准时的话，我们就直接去会场。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one 万一 plan and one 假如 sentence.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Adverbs with adjectives

HSK 5

格外 means "especially, unusually": it says something is more than usual in this situation. It goes before an adjective: 今天的月亮格外圆. It is more formal than 特别.

格外 (especially / exceptionally)

Form: 格外 + adjective / feeling verb

- **今晚的月亮格外圆，格外亮。** *Jīnwǎn de yuèliang géwài yuán, géwài liàng.* – Tonight the moon is especially round and bright.
- **第一次离开家，他格外想念妈妈。** *Dì-yī cì líkāi jiā, tā géwài xiǎngniàn māma.* – Away from home for the first time, he especially missed his mum.
- **下雪了，开车要格外小心。** *Xià xuě le, kāichē yào géwài xiǎoxīn.* – It's snowing, so drive extra carefully.
- **雨后的空气格外清新。** *Yǔ hòu de kōngqì géwài qīngxīn.* – The air after rain is especially fresh.
- **节日里，街上显得格外热闹。** *Jiérì li, jiē shang xiǎnde géwài rènao.* – During the festival, the streets look especially lively.
- **听到这个好消息，大家格外高兴。** *Tīngdào zhège hǎo xiāoxi, dàjiā géwài gāoxìng.* – Hearing the good news, everyone was especially happy.

How it works. 格外 *géwài* means "especially, unusually, more than usual". It always carries a comparison, even when it is not said: compared with other nights (今晚的月亮格外圆), with normal times (节日里格外热闹), or because of the situation (下雪了 → 格外小心). The first clause often gives that reason or time.

格外 is an adverb, so it goes right before an adjective or a feeling verb (想念, 喜欢, 珍惜). It is a little more written and descriptive than 特别, which is why it is common in stories and diaries. 显得格外 ("looks especially …") is a frequent chunk.

很 / 非常	特别	格外
very; no comparison needed	especially / very; everyday	more than usual; a comparison is implied
天气很好。	今天特别冷。	雪后的早晨格外安静。

Watch out

- Do not stack degree words: *wrong:* 格外很高兴 → 格外高兴.
- 格外 is an adverb only, never an adjective before a noun: *wrong:* 他是格外的人 → 他是一个很特别的人.
- Without any reason or contrast it sounds odd: *wrong:* 我格外是学生. Use it to describe a quality that stands out at a particular time.

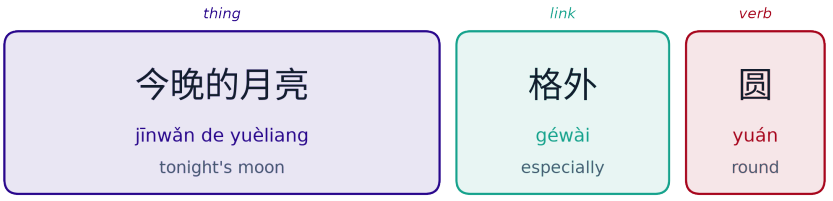
exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

In a passage

> 今年春节，我回到了离开三年的家乡。村子里格外热闹，家家户户都挂起了红灯笼。见到奶奶的那一刻，我心里格外激动。那天晚上的饺子，我觉得格外好吃。

Read and notice. Find the three 格外 phrases. Why does each feeling stand out more than usual?

格外: especially



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Complete: “After the rain the air is especially fresh.” 雨后的空气 …… 清新。

2. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 今天冷格外。
- B. 今天格外冷。
- C. 格外今天很冷。
- D. 今天格外很冷。

3. Build: “It’s snowing; drive extra carefully.”

Put in order: ， 开车 / 要格外 / 小心。 / 下雪了

4. True or false? 格外 is close in meaning to 特别. If false, correct it.

5. At the Mid-Autumn Festival you look up and the moon is brighter than you’ve ever seen. Use 格外. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Find and fix the problem. A note says 今天格外安静. A classmate thinks the place is always the quietest anywhere. Correct it.

7. Use it yourself. Explain why the park is especially quiet today.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 格外

格外 + Adj = more than usual.

2. B. 今天格外冷。

今天格外冷 is right: 格外 ("especially") is a degree adverb, so it replaces 很 and goes before a bare adjective.

3. 下雪了，开车要格外小心。

要 + 格外 + Adj.

4. True.

Both stress "more than usual".

5. Model answer: 今晚的月亮格外圆，格外亮。

Check your answer:

- Do not add 很 or 非常: 格外高兴, not 格外很高兴.
- 格外 implies "more than usual"; it sounds odd when nothing is being compared.

■ Mixed practice

6. 格外 compares with usual: today it is especially quiet, more than normal for this place.

7. Model answer. 今天下雨，公园里格外安静。

Review later. Tomorrow, describe one thing that is 格外 different today.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Cause & effect statements

HSK 5

之所以 …… 是因为 …… puts the result first and the cause second: 他之所以成功，是因为很努力 ("the reason he succeeded is that he worked hard"). Use it when the result is already known and you want to explain it.

之所以 ... 是因为 ... (effect before cause)

Form: subject + 之所以 + result，是因为 + cause

- **我们之所以受欢迎，是因为一直用最新鲜的材料。** *Wǒmen zhīsuǒyǐ shòu huānyíng, shì yīnwèi yìzhí yòng zuì xīnxiān de cáiliào.* – The reason we're popular is that we've always used the freshest ingredients.
- **我之所以选择这个专业，是因为我对医学很感兴趣。** *Wǒ zhīsuǒyǐ xuǎnzé zhège zhuānyè, shì yīnwèi wǒ duì yīxué hěn gǎn xìngqù.* – The reason I chose this major is that I'm interested in medicine.
- **他之所以迟到，是因为路上堵车。** *Tā zhīsuǒyǐ chídào, shì yīnwèi lù shang dǔchē.* – The reason he was late is that there was a traffic jam.
- **这本书之所以畅销，是因为故事很真实。** *Zhè běn shū zhīsuǒyǐ chàngxiāo, shì yīnwèi gùshi hěn zhēnshí.* – The reason this book sells so well is that the story feels real.
- **比赛之所以取消，是因为天气太差。** *Bǐsài zhīsuǒyǐ qǔxiāo, shì yīnwèi tiānqì tài chà.* – The match was cancelled because the weather was too bad.
- **我之所以学汉语，一是因为喜欢中国文化，二是因为将来想在中国工作。** *Wǒ zhīsuǒyǐ xué Hànyǔ, yī shì yīnwèi xǐhuan Zhōngguó wénhuà, èr shì yīnwèi jiānglái xiǎng zài Zhōngguó gōngzuò.* – I study Chinese, firstly because I like Chinese culture and secondly because I want to work in China in the future.

How it works. In 因为 …… 所以 …… the cause comes first. 之所以 …… 是因为 …… turns this round: the **result**, which everyone already knows, comes first after 之所以 *zhīsuǒyǐ*, and the explanation follows with 是因为. The focus falls on the reason, so it answers an implied "why?".

That makes it ideal for essays, presentations and interview answers: name the fact (我之所以选择这个专业), then give your reasons, even several of them (一是因为 ……，二是因为 ……). 之所以 goes after the subject.

因为 A，所以 B	B 之所以 ……，是因为 A
cause → result; everyday	known result → its cause; explaining, formal
因为路上堵车，所以他迟到了。	他之所以迟到，是因为路上堵车。

Watch out

- The result goes after 之所以, the cause after 是因为; do not swap them: *wrong:* 之所以下雨，是因为比赛取消了 → 比赛之所以取消，是因为下雨.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- Keep 是 in 是因为: *wrong:* 他之所以迟到，因为堵车 → 他之所以迟到，是因为堵车.
- 之所以 goes after the subject: *wrong:* 之所以他迟到 → 他之所以迟到.

In a passage

> 很多游客问，这家小饭馆为什么天天排队。老板说，饭馆之所以受欢迎，一是因为价格便宜，二是因为每道菜都是现做的。他之所以坚持不加盟连锁店，是因为想保持自己的味道。

Read and notice. What two facts does the owner explain? Give the reasons in your own words.

之所以 …，是因为 …: the reason … is that …



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Complete: “The reason I’m tired is that I slept badly.” 我之所以很累，…… 因为昨晚没睡好。

2. Which sentence is logically correct?

- A. 之所以下雨，是因为比赛取消了。
- B. 之所以比赛取消，所以下雨。
- C. 比赛之所以下雨，是因为取消了。
- D. 比赛之所以取消，是因为下雨了。

3. Build: “I chose this major because I’m interested in medicine.”

Put in order: 我之所以选择这个专业 / 我对医学很感兴趣。/ 是因为 / ，

4. True or false? 因为 … 所以 … puts the cause first; 之所以 … 是因为 … puts the result first. If false, correct it.

5. A journalist asks a famous chef why her restaurant has stayed popular for thirty years. Use 之所以 … 是因为 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Find and fix the problem. A classmate writes 之所以因为下雨，是我们改了计划. Correct the sentence.

7. Use it yourself. Explain why you chose the library instead of studying at home.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 是

之所以 …，是因为 ….

2. D. 比赛之所以取消，是因为下雨了。

之所以 + result (cancelled), 是因为 + cause (rain).

3. 我之所以选择这个专业，是因为我对医学很感兴趣。

Result, then 是因为 + cause.

4. True.

That is the key difference.

5. Model answer: 我们之所以受欢迎，是因为一直用最新鲜的材料。

Check your answer:

- Do not reverse it: 之所以 introduces the result, 是因为 the cause. Not 之所以下雨，是因为比赛取消了.
- The second clause usually starts with 是因为: 之所以 …，是因为 ….

■ Mixed practice

6. The result follows 之所以 and the cause follows 是因为: 我们之所以改了计划，是因为下雨了.

7. Model answer. 我之所以去图书馆学习，是因为家里太吵了。

Review later. Tomorrow, explain one of your choices with 之所以 …… 是因为 …….

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Complements

HSK 5

Complements finish the meaning of a verb. Some show degree (得要命, 坏了), some ability (得了/不了), some a result (住, 开, 出来, 着, 到), and Verb + 来 + Verb + 去 shows an action going back and forth. Ask each time: does it say how much, whether you can, or how it ended?

At a glance

- **1.** Advanced degree complements – 得 + 很 / 要命 …: 我累得要命，什么都不想做了。
- **2.** Verb / Adj + 坏了 – broken / to an extreme: 今天可把我累坏了!
- **3.** Verb + 得了 / 不了 – can / can't manage: 这么多菜，我们吃不了。
- **4.** Result complements 住 / 开 / 出来: 抓住把手，别松开!
- **5.** Verb + 着 (zháo) – managed to / succeeded: 我两点才睡着。
- **6.** Verb + 到 – succeed in reaching: 我买到票了!
- **7.** Verb + 来 + Verb + 去 – back and forth: 它在客厅里走来走去。

1. Advanced degree complements (得 + 很 / 要命 ...)

Form: adjective / feeling + 得 + 很 / 要命 / 不行 / 不得了

- **我累得要命，什么都不想做了。** *Wǒ lèi de yàomìng.* – I'm dead tired; I don't feel like doing anything.
- **这里安静得很。** – It's really quiet here.
- **我饿得不行了。** – I'm starving.
- **听到消息，她高兴得不得了。** – She was overjoyed at the news.

How it works. These complements come **after** the adjective with 得 and push it to a high degree. They are spoken and expressive.

Complement	Feel	Example
得很	emphatic, mild	好得很
得要命	very strong, usually a complaint	疼得要命
得不行	can hardly bear it	困得不行
得不得了	extreme, good or bad	高兴得不得了

Watch out

- Not literal: 冷得要命 means "freezing", not dangerous.
- No degree word before the adjective: *wrong:* 很累得要命 → 累得要命.
- In essays, use 非常 / 十分 / 特别.

Adjective + 得要命: terribly



2. Verb / Adj + 坏了 (broken / to an extreme)

Form: action verb + 坏 (了) (broken) · feeling / state + 坏了 (terribly)

- **我的手机摔坏了。** *Wǒ de shǒujī shuāihuài le.* – I dropped my phone and broke it.
- **弟弟把我的眼镜弄坏了。** – My little brother broke my glasses.
- **今天可把我累坏了！** – Today completely wore me out!
- **听到这个消息，她高兴坏了。** – She was thrilled at the news.

How it works. After an action verb, 坏 is a result: the thing broke (摔坏 by dropping, 用坏 by use, 弄坏 by handling). After a feeling or state, 坏了 means "extremely" and nothing breaks: 饿坏了, 急坏了, 高兴坏了. 了 is usually needed in that sense.

电脑用坏了	我饿坏了
broken (result)	starving (degree)

Spoken frame. 可把 + person + feeling + 坏了: 可把我急坏了 "I was worried sick".

Watch out

- The broken-result sense often takes 把 with the thing damaged: 把眼镜弄坏了.

Verb / adj + 坏 了: worn out, broken



3. Verb + 得了 / 不了 (can / can't manage)

Form: verb + 得了 / 不了 (*liǎo*)

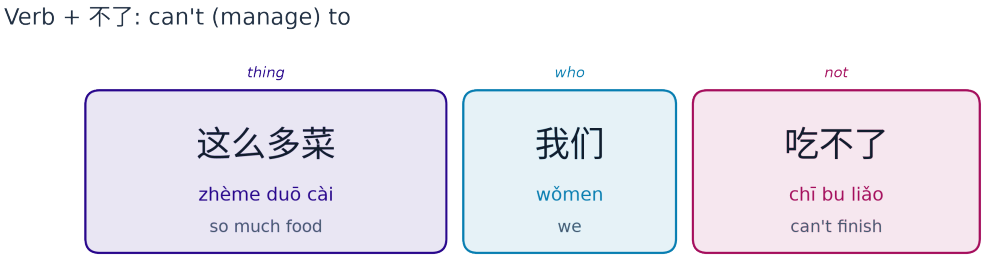
- **这么多菜，我们吃不了。** *Wǒmen chī bu liǎo.* – That's more food than we can eat.
- **这么热的天，我受不了。** – I can't stand this heat.
- **明天我有事，去不了。** – I've got something on tomorrow, so I can't go.
- **你一个人搬得了吗?** – Can you move it by yourself?

How it works. 了 here is read *liǎo* "manage, finish". 得了 says something can be managed and 不了 that it can't: too much, too hard, or blocked by circumstances. 不了 is far more common; questions use 得了吗 or 得了 …… 不了.

吃不了	吃不完	不能吃
can't manage (too much / unable)	can't finish (some will be left)	mustn't / can't eat it

Watch out

- Not *le*: *wrong:* chī bu le → *chī bu liǎo.*
- 不了 also predicts: 他来不了 means he won't be able to come.



4. Result complements 住 / 开 / 出来

Form: verb + 住 / 开 / 出来 (result complements)

- **抓住把手，别松开!** *Zhuāzhù bǎshǒu, bié sōngkāi!* – Hold on to the handlebars, don't let go!
- **记住我的电话号码。** – Remember my phone number.
- **我看出来他在说谎。** – I could tell he was lying.
- **他想出了一个好办法。** – He came up with a good idea.

How it works. The complement says what result the action reached.

Complement	Result	Examples
住	fixed, held, stopped	抓住 grab, 记住 remember, 站住 stop!
开	open, apart, away	打开 open, 拉开 pull open, 走开 go away
出来	out, produced, recognised	想出来 think of, 看出来 tell, 写出来 write out

Potential forms. 记不住 can't remember · 打不开 won't open · 想不出来 can't think of it. With an object, 出来 can split: 想出一个办法来.

Watch out

- 看见 means seeing with your eyes; 看出来 means working something out from clues.



5. Verb + 着 (zháo) (managed to / succeeded)

Form: verb + 着 (*zháo*) · verb + 不着 / 没 + verb + 着

- **我两点才睡着。** *Wǒ liǎng diǎn cái shuìzháo.* – I didn't fall asleep until two.
- **我太紧张了，睡不着。** – I'm too nervous to sleep.
- **我找了半天也没找着。** – I looked for ages and couldn't find it.

How it works. Read *zháo*, 着 after a verb means the action reached its goal: 睡着 fall asleep, 找着 find, 买着 manage to buy. The potential 睡不着 "can't get to sleep" is very common. With 找 and 买, 到 is the standard form (找到, 买到); 着 sounds colloquial and northern.

睡着 *shuìzháo*	**睡着 *shuìzhe***	**睡到十点**
fall asleep	in the state of sleeping (他睡着呢)	sleep until ten

Watch out

- The sentence tells you the reading: 睡不着 and 没睡着 are always *zháo*.

- 睡着 “fall asleep” has no 到 version.



6. Verb + 到 (succeed in reaching)

Form: verb + 到 (+ object / place / time)

- **我买到票了！** *Wǒ mǎidào piào le!* – I got tickets!
- **你收到我的邮件了吗?** – Did you get my email?
- **他走到门口。** – He walked to the door.
- **我们聊到很晚。** – We chatted until very late.

How it works. 到 after a verb marks that the action reached its goal (a thing found, bought, received), a place or a time.

Action	Result
找 look for	找到 find
看 look	看到 / 看见 see
听 listen	听到 / 听见 hear

Forms. Negative: 没买到 (tried, didn’t get one). Potential: 买得到 / 买不到.

Watch out

- Searching isn’t finding: 我找了，可是没找到.
- Don’t negate the result with 不 for past events: *wrong:* 我不买到 → 我没买到.



7. Verb + 来 + Verb + 去 (back and forth)

Form: verb + 来 + same verb + 去

- **它在客厅里走来走去。** *Tā zài kètīng li zǒu lái zǒu qù.* – It keeps pacing back and forth in the living room.
- **孩子们在院子里跑来跑去。** – The children are running about in the yard.
- **我想来想去，还是决定不去了。** – I thought it over and over and decided not to go after all.
- **他们说来说去还是那几句话。** – They went round in circles saying the same few things.

How it works. Repeating a one-syllable verb with 来 and 去 shows movement in many directions, or doing something over and over. With thinking and talking, it suggests going round in circles before a conclusion (还是 / 最后).

走来走去	来回走	一个来回
walk about, pace	walk back and forth	a round trip

Watch out

- Use the same verb twice: *wrong:* 走来跑去 → 走来走去.
- It describes an activity; don't add a result complement (*wrong:* 走来走去完了).



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. Advanced degree complements (得 + 很 / 要命 ...)

1. Complete: "I'm starving." 我饿 …… 不行了。

2. Which suits a formal essay?

- A. 这个问题难死了。
- B. 这个问题难得不行。
- C. 这个问题非常难。

- D. 这个问题难得要命。

3. Match each phrase to its meaning.

- (1) 疼得要命
- (2) 安静得很
- (3) 高兴得不得了
- A. hurts terribly
- B. over the moon
- C. really quiet

4. True or false? 冷得要命 means it is literally dangerously cold. If false, correct it.

5. You finally reach the hostel after walking all day in the mountains. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. Verb / Adj + 坏了 (broken / to an extreme)

6. Complete: "The kids are starving." 孩子们饿 …… 了。

7. In 电脑用坏了, what does 坏 express?

- A. someone was angry
- B. the computer broke from use
- C. the computer is bad quality
- D. extremely

8. Build: "My brother broke my glasses."

Put in order: 弟弟 / 弄坏 / 把我的眼镜 / 了。

9. True or false? In 高兴坏了, something is broken. If false, correct it.

10. Your mum comes home after a twelve-hour shift and collapses on the sofa. Use Verb / Adj + 坏了. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. Verb + 得了 / 不了 (can / can't manage)

11. Complete: "I've got something on tomorrow, so I can't come." 我明天有事，来 …… 了。

12. How is 了 read in 受不了?

- A. lài
- B. le
- C. lā
- D. liǎo

13. Build: "I can't stand this heat."

Put in order: 这么热的天 / 受不了。/ ， / 我

14. True or false? In a rule, 你不能去 means you are not allowed; 你去不了 means you are not able to go. If false, correct it.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

15. Your host keeps adding dishes to the table, far more than two people can eat. Use Verb + 得了 / 不了. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 4. Result complements 住 / 开 / 出来

16. Complete: "Remember: the meeting is at nine." 记 ……：会议九点开始。

17. "I can't open this bottle." Which is correct?

- A. 这个瓶子我打不开。
- B. 这个瓶子我不打开。
- C. 这个瓶子我不能开打。
- D. 这个瓶子我打开不。

18. Match each verb to its meaning.

- (1) 抓住
- (2) 离开
- (3) 想出来
- (4) 看出来
- A. tell, make out
- B. come up with
- C. grab hold of
- D. leave

19. True or false? 看出来 and 看见 mean the same. If false, correct it.

20. You are helping your little sister learn to ride a bike. Use Result complements 住 / 开 / 出来. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 5. Verb + 着 (zháo) (managed to / succeeded)

21. Complete: "I'm too nervous; I can't get to sleep." 我太紧张了，睡不 ……。

22. How is 着 read in 我两点才睡着?

- A. zhuó
- B. zháo
- C. zhe
- D. zhāo

23. Build: "Did you find the keys?"

Put in order: 了 / 钥匙 / 找着 / 吗?

24. True or false? 睡到十点 means "fell asleep at ten". If false, correct it.

25. You tossed and turned for hours before you managed to sleep. Use Verb + 着. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 6. Verb + 到 (succeed in reaching)

26. Complete: "I looked for it for ages but didn't find it." 我找了半天也没找 ……。

27. Which says "I can't get hold of this book anywhere"?

- A. 这本书哪儿都买到不。
- B. 这本书哪儿都不买到。
- C. 这本书哪儿都没买。
- D. 这本书哪儿都买不到。

28. Build: "We chatted until very late."

Put in order: 聊到 / 我们 / 很晚。

29. True or false? 听到 makes clear that the sound was actually heard. If false, correct it.

30. Concert tickets sold out in two minutes, but you clicked fast enough. Use Verb + 到. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 7. Verb + 来 + Verb + 去 (back and forth)

31. Complete: "Birds are flying back and forth." 鸟儿飞来飞 ……。

32. Which is correct?

- A. 他走来走去。
- B. 他走来跑去。
- C. 他走去走来了完。
- D. 他来走去走。

33. Build: "I thought it over and over and decided not to go."

Put in order: 还是决定 / ， / 不去了。/ 我想来想去

34. True or false? 一个来回 means "a round trip". If false, correct it.

35. Your dog can't settle before the storm and keeps pacing around the living room. Use Verb + 来 + Verb + 去. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

36. Choose 得了 or 着: 这么多菜，我一个人吃不 ……。/ 我找了半天，终于找 …… 了。

37. Choose 住 or 开: 请记 …… 我的电话号码。/ 请把门打 ……。

38. Say "He walked back and forth in the room."

39. What does 饿坏了 mean?

40. Find and fix the problem. A classmate thinks 看不了 and 没看完 mean the same. What is the difference?

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

41. Use it yourself. Ask someone to hold the door, and say you can't eat so much food.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. Advanced degree complements (得 + 很 / 要命 ...)

1. 得

Adj + 得 + 不行.

2. C. 这个问题非常难。

The 得 complements are colloquial; essays use 非常.

3. (1) A: 疼得要命 = hurts terribly; (2) C: 安静得很 = really quiet; (3) B: 高兴得不得了 = over the moon

All are degree complements with different flavours.

4. False.

要命 is just an intensifier here.

5. Model answer: 我累得要命，什么都不想做了。

Check your answer:

- 要命 does not mean real danger: 冷得要命 just means "freezing".
- No 很 before the adjective: 累得要命, not 很累得要命.

■ 2. Verb / Adj + 坏了 (broken / to an extreme)

6. 坏

Feeling / state + 坏了 = extremely.

7. B. the computer broke from use

Action verb + 坏 = broken by that action.

8. 弟弟把我的眼镜弄坏了。

把 + object + verb + 坏 + 了.

9. False.

With feelings, 坏了 just means "extremely".

10. Model answer: 今天可把我累坏了！

Check your answer:

- Action verb + 坏 = something is physically broken: 电脑用坏了 – "The computer broke from use."
- Feeling / state + 坏了 = an extreme degree, nothing broken: 饿坏了. 了 is usually needed.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 3. Verb + 得了 / 不了 (can / can't manage)

11. 不

Verb + 不了 = can't manage.

12. D. liǎo

In potential complements 得了 / 不了 ("can / can't manage"), 了 is read liǎo: 受不了 shòu bu liǎo "can't stand it". The particle le is a different use.

13. 这么热的天，我受不了。

Topic, then subject + 受不了.

14. True.

不能 can be a rule; 去不了 says it is impossible.

15. Model answer: 这么多菜，我们吃不了。

Check your answer:

- In 吃不了 / 去得了, 了 = liǎo, not the particle le.
- Ask with both forms: 你去得了去不了? ("Can you make it?") or 你去得了吗? – "Can you make it?"

■ 4. Result complements 住 / 开 / 出来

16. 住

记住 = remember (fix in memory).

17. A. 这个瓶子我打不开。

Potential complement: 打不开.

18. (1) C: 抓住 = grab hold of; (2) D: 离开 = leave; (3) B: 想出来 = come up with; (4) A: 看出来 = tell, make out

住 fixes, 开 separates, 出来 brings out.

19. False.

看见 = see; 看出来 = work out from clues.

20. Model answer: 抓住把手，别松开!

Check your answer:

- 记不住 = can't remember; 打不开 = can't open; 想不出来 = can't think of it.
- 出来 can split around an object: 想出一个办法来 / 想出来一个办法 – "Come up with a solution."

■ 5. Verb + 着 (zháo) (managed to / succeeded)

21. 着

睡不着 = can't fall asleep.

22. B. zháo

Success in reaching the goal = zháo.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

23. 钥匙找着了吗?

Verb + 着 (zháo) + 了.

24. False.

False. 到 after a verb shows the end point in time: 睡到十点 means "slept until ten". "Fell asleep at ten" is 十点睡着了.

25. Model answer: 我两点才睡着。

Check your answer:

- 睡着 (shuì zháo) = fall asleep (the goal reached); 睡着 (shuì zhe) = in a sleeping state – context and reading tell them apart.
- For finding, 找到 is the standard, more general form; 找着 is colloquial, mainly northern.

■ 6. Verb + 到 (succeed in reaching)

26. 到

找到 = find (the goal reached).

27. D. 这本书哪儿都买不到。

Potential complement: 买不到.

28. 我们聊到很晚。

Verb + 到 + degree / time.

29. True.

True. 听 is the action of listening; adding the result complement 到 shows the sound was actually perceived: 我听了，可是没听到.

30. Model answer: 我买到票了!

Check your answer:

- 找 = look for; 找到 = find. 我找了，可是没找到 – "I looked but didn't find it."
- Negate with 没: 没买到; potential: 买不到 / 买得到.

■ 7. Verb + 来 + Verb + 去 (back and forth)

31. 去

V 来 V 去.

32. A. 他走来走去。

In verb + 来 + verb + 去 the same verb repeats to show movement back and forth: 他走来走去 "He paces up and down." Mixing two verbs or adding 了完 breaks the pattern.

33. 我想来想去，还是决定不去了。

想来想去 + decision.

34. True.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

True. 来回 can be a noun meaning “a round trip”: 一个来回要两个小时. As an adverb it means “back and forth”.

35. Model answer: 它在客厅里走来走去。

Check your answer:

- Use the same verb in both places: 走来走去, not 走来跑去.
- It describes a repeated activity, so it rarely takes a result complement: 走来走去, not 走来走去完.

■ Mixed practice

36. 我一个人吃不了 (cannot manage)。终于找着了 (zháo: managed to find).

37. 请记住 (fix it in memory)。请把门打开 (open).

38. 他在房间里走来走去。

39. Extremely hungry. After an adjective, 坏了 means “terribly”; after a verb it can mean broken (电脑用坏了).

40. 看不了 says you cannot manage it (too much, no time, not allowed). 没看完 reports that you did not finish it.

41. Model answer. 请把门拉住。这么多菜，我吃不了。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one sentence each with 住, 开 and 出来.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Conditional statements

HSK 5

一旦 …… 就 …… means "once …, then …": if something happens, a result follows straight away. It is often used for serious or lasting results: 一旦决定了，就不要改.

一旦 … ，就 … (once …, then …)

Form: (subject) + 一旦 + event，(subject) + 就 + consequence

- **一旦着火，就很难控制。** *Yídàn zháohuǒ, jiù hěn nán kòngzhì.* – Once a fire starts, it's very hard to control.
- **习惯一旦养成，就很难改变。** *Xíguàn yídàn yǎngchéng, jiù hěn nán gǎibiàn.* – Once a habit is formed, it's hard to change.
- **一旦有消息，我就通知你。** *Yídàn yǒu xiāoxi, wǒ jiù tōngzhī nǐ.* – As soon as there's news, I'll let you know.
- **你一旦决定了，就别后悔。** *Nǐ yídàn juédìng le, jiù bié hòuhuǐ.* – Once you've decided, don't regret it.
- **密码一旦忘了，就要重新申请。** *Mìmǎ yídàn wàng le, jiù yào chóngxīn shēnqǐng.* – If you ever forget the password, you have to apply again.
- **一旦发现问题，请马上报告老师。** *Yídàn fāxiàn wèntí, qǐng mǎshàng bàogào lǎoshī.* – If you discover a problem, report it to the teacher at once.

How it works. 一旦 *yídàn* means "once, if ever, the moment that". It introduces a possible event that would change things, and 就 gives what follows from that moment. Because the event is decisive, 一旦 is typical of warnings, rules, safety notices and serious decisions: 一旦着火, 一旦发现问题, 一旦决定.

The subject can come before 一旦 (你一旦决定了 / 习惯一旦养成), and when the second clause has a different subject, it goes before 就 (一旦有消息，我就通知你). Many 一旦 sentences describe something that has not happened and may never happen; it is a "what if, from that point on" word.

如果	一旦…… 就 ……	一 …… 就 ……
if; neutral	once; decisive, often a warning	as soon as; an everyday sequence
如果下雨，我们就不去。	一旦下雨，比赛就取消。	我一到家就给你打电话。

Watch out

- For ordinary daily routines, 一 …… 就 is more natural: *wrong:* 我一旦起床，就刷牙 → 我一起床就刷牙.
- Keep 就 in the second clause, after its subject: *wrong:* 一旦有消息，就我通知你 → 一旦有消息，我就通知你.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- 一旦 looks forward to a possible event; for a past fact use 自从 or 以后: *wrong:* 一旦他来了中国，他就很忙 → 他来中国以后一直很忙.

In a passage

> 实验室安全规定：一、进实验室一定要穿实验服。二、一旦闻到奇怪的气味，就要马上打开窗户，离开房间。三、化学药品一旦洒在皮肤上，就要立刻用大量清水冲洗。四、发现任何问题，请第一时间告诉老师。

Read and notice. Which two rules use 一旦? What should you do in each case?

一旦 … 就 …: once it happens, the result follows

link

一旦着火

yídàn zháohuǒ

once a fire starts

verb

就很难控制

jiù hěn nán kòngzhì

it's very hard to control

习惯一旦养成

xíguàn yídàn yǎngchéng

once a habit is formed

就很难改变

jiù hěn nán gǎibiàn

it's hard to change

Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Complete: “Once you’ve decided, don’t regret it.” 你 …… 决定了，就别后悔。

2. Everyday routine: “As soon as I get home, I take a shower.” Which fits best?

- A. 我一旦到家才洗澡。
- B. 我到家一旦洗澡。
- C. 我一到家就洗澡。
- D. 我一旦到家就洗澡。

3. Build: “Once a habit is formed, it’s hard to change.”

Put in order: 改变。 / 就很难 / 习惯一旦养成 / ，

4. True or false? 一旦 often carries a warning tone. If false, correct it.

5. A forest ranger warns visitors about fires in the dry season. Use 一旦 … ， 就 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Find and fix the problem. A rule says 一旦发现错误，就要报告. A classmate thinks an error has been found. Correct it.

7. Use it yourself. Write an instruction for what to do once a file is lost.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 一旦

一旦 + decisive event, 就 + result.

2. C. 我一到家就洗澡。

An ordinary routine takes 一 … 就 …; 一旦 is for weighty events.

3. 习惯一旦养成，就很难改变。

一旦 A，就 B.

4. True.

It stresses consequences once something happens.

5. Model answer: 一旦着火，就很难控制。

Check your answer:

- 一旦 is for an event that may happen and matters; for everyday "as soon as", 一 … 就 … is more natural: 我一到家就给你打电话 – "I'll call you as soon as I get home."
- Pair it with 就 after the subject of the result: 一旦下雨，比赛就取消 – "If it rains, the match will be canceled."

■ Mixed practice

6. 一旦 means "if or once it happens". The rule says what to do if an error is found; no error has been found yet.

7. Model answer. 一旦文件丢了，就要马上告诉老师。

Review later. Tomorrow, write one school rule with 一旦 …… 就 …….

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Sentence patterns – advanced

HSK 5

Advanced sentence patterns for writing and discussion. They rearrange the sentence (advanced 把, 从 …… 中, 在 …… 内), compare and define (不比, 等于, 所谓), weigh choices (宁可, 不是 …… 就是 ……) and show attitude (要 V 就 V, V 就 V, 少不了). Read each pattern as a whole frame: the second half matters as much as the first.

At a glance

Where, when and what about

- **1.** Advanced 把 – 把 + Obj + Verb + result: 请把第三段改得短一点儿，再把图表放到最后。
- **2.** 从 … 中 – from within: 我们要从失败中吸取教训。
- **3.** 在 + Time + 内 – within a span: 我们保证三天内送到。
- **4.** 跟 / 和 … 有关的 + Noun – related to: 我借了几本跟环境有关的书。

Comparing and defining

- **5.** N1 + 不比 + N2 + Adj – no more … than: 这个牌子不比那个好。
- **6.** A 等于 B – equals / amounts to: 你不说话就等于同意了。
- **7.** 所谓 – the so-called …: 他所谓的近路，比大路还远。

Choices and combinations

- **8.** 宁可 … ，也 … – would rather: 我宁可走路回家，也不坐那么挤的车。
- **9.** 不是 … ，就是 … – either … or …: 这里的春天不是刮风，就是下雨。
- **10.** 一面 … ，一面 … – two things at once: 他一面开车，一面跟乘客聊天。
- **11.** 不但 …，甚至连 … 也 … – not only …, even …: 他不但忘了带笔，甚至连准考证也忘了。

Attitude and purpose

- **12.** 要 + Verb + 就 + Verb – if you're going to, do it right: 要学就好好学，别三天打鱼两天晒网。
- **13.** Verb + 就 + Verb – indifference / a shrug: 晚了就晚了，没关系。
- **14.** 少不了 – can't do without: 生日聚会少不了蛋糕。
- **15.** 无 … 可 … – have no … to …: 我已经无话可说了。
- **16.** Action，好 + Purpose – so that: 你走以前留个便条，好让他知道你去哪儿了。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

1. Advanced 把 (把 + Obj + Verb + result)

Form: subject + (没 / 别 / 要 …) + 把 + specific object + verb + result / place / change / 得-complement

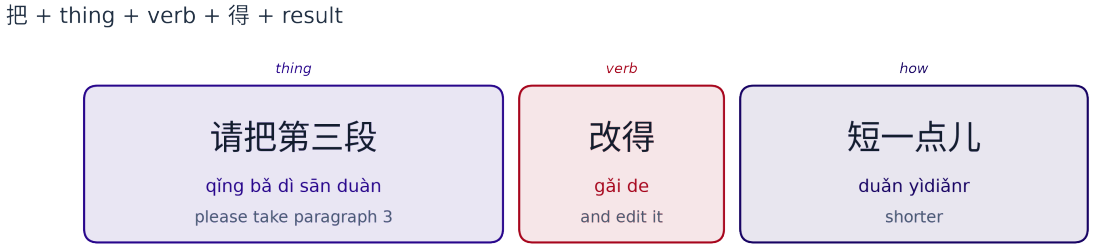
- **请把第三段改得短一点儿，再把图表放到最后。** *Qǐng bǎ dì-sān duàn gǎi de duǎn yìdiǎnr.* – Please make the third paragraph shorter and move the chart to the end.
- **他把客厅变成了书房。** – He turned the living room into a study.
- **她把房间打扫得干干净净。** – She cleaned the room spotless.
- **你应该把问题说清楚。** – You should explain the problem clearly.

How it works. 把 focuses on what happens to a specific object: it moves, changes, ends up somewhere, or reaches a result. The verb never stands alone; something must follow it.

After the verb	Example
place	放到最后 · 放在桌上
change	翻译成中文 · 变成书房
direction	送回家 · 拿出来
得 + manner	打扫得干干净净

Watch out

- Negatives and modals go **before** 把: *wrong:* 你把问题应该说清楚 → 你应该把问题说清楚; 我没把门关上.
- Verbs of perceiving and feeling (看见, 知道, 喜欢) don't take 把.



2. 从 … 中 (from within)

Form: 从 + source + 中 + verb · …, (并) 从中 + verb

- **我们要从失败中吸取教训。** *Wǒmen yào cóng shībài zhōng xīqǔ jiàoxùn.* – We must learn lessons from failure.
- **他从工作中得到了很多经验。** – He gained a lot of experience from his work.
- **从这些方案中选一个最好的。** – Choose the best of these plans.

- **他犯了错误，并从中学到了很多。** – He made a mistake and learned a lot from it.

How it works. 从 …… 中 *cóng … zhōng* “from within” marks the source of something gained, learned or chosen. 中 can become 里 in speech (从书里学到). 从中 “from it / from among them” refers back to something already mentioned.

Watch out

- The phrase goes before the verb: *wrong:* 选一个从中 → 从中选一个.
- Keep 中 for learning “through” an experience: *wrong:* 从失败学习 → 从失败中学习.



3. 在 + Time + 内 (within a span)

Form: (在) + time span / place + 内 (+ verb)

- **我们保证三天内送到。** *Wǒmen bǎozhèng sān tiān nèi sòngdào.* – We guarantee delivery within three days.
- **护照必须在两周内办好。** – The passport must be done within two weeks.
- **在学校内不能吸烟。** – No smoking on school grounds.

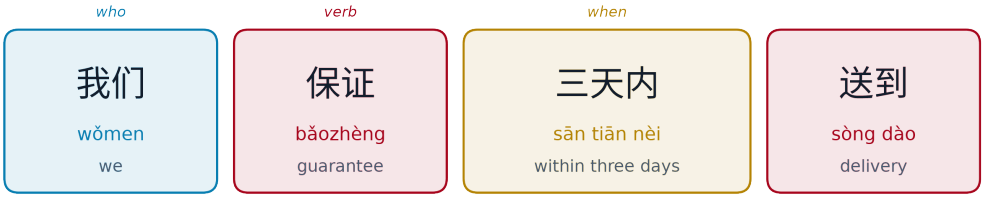
How it works. 内 *nèi* “within” sets a limit, any time up to the end of the span, or inside a place. The phrase comes **before** the verb. 内 is formal (notices, rules); 之内 / 以内 are similar, and casual speech uses 三天里.

三天内	三天以后
by the end of day three (or sooner)	after three days (not before)

Watch out

- *wrong:* 完成在三天内 → 在三天内完成.

… 内: within



4. 跟 / 和 … 有关的 + Noun (related to)

Form: 跟 / 和 + X + 有关的 + noun · A + 跟 / 和 + B + 有关

- **我借了几本跟环境有关的书。** *Gēn huánjìng yǒuguān de shū.* – I borrowed some books related to the environment.
- **请只回答和这次考试有关的问题。** – Please only answer questions related to this exam.
- **他的病跟压力有关。** – His illness is linked to stress.
- **这件事跟他没有关系。** – This has nothing to do with him.

How it works. As a modifier, the whole 跟 X 有关 phrase + 的 goes **before** the noun. As a sentence, A 跟 B 有关 says A is connected to B, and the connection can be a cause. Negative: 跟 …… 无关 / 没有关系.

关于环境的书	跟环境有关的书
about (topic)	related to (any connection)

Watch out

- *wrong:* 书跟环境有关的 → 跟环境有关的书.
- 有关 says there is a link, not how strong: 跟压力有关 doesn't say stress is the only cause.

跟 … 有关: related to



5. N1 + 不比 + N2 + Adj (no more ... than)

Form: A + 不比 + B + adjective

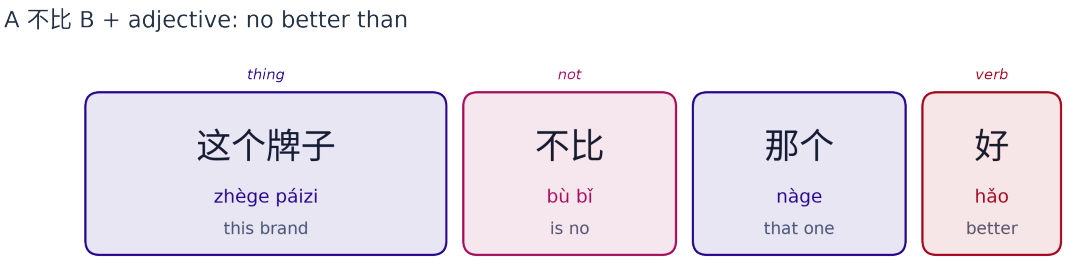
- **这个牌子不比那个好。** *Zhège páizi bù bǐ nàge hǎo.* – This brand is no better than that one.
- **今天不比昨天冷，你别穿那么多。** – Today's no colder than yesterday; don't wear so much.
- **我的中文不比你差。** – My Chinese is no worse than yours.

How it works. A 不比 B + adjective **denies** that A is more [adjective] than B, usually to correct someone. It doesn't say which side is higher: A could be equal or lower.

Sentence	Means
弟弟比哥哥高	the younger brother is taller
弟弟没有哥哥高	he is shorter
弟弟不比哥哥高	he isn't taller (maybe the same)

Watch out

- 不比 ≠ 没有: use 没有 to say A clearly falls short.
- The adjective takes no 很 / 更 (*wrong:* 不比他更高).



6. A 等于 B (equals / amounts to)

Form: A + (就) + 等于 + B · A + 不等于 + B

- **二加三等于五。** *Èr jiā sān děngyú wǔ.* – Two plus three equals five.
- **你不说话就等于同意了。** – Saying nothing amounts to agreeing.
- **不复习就去考试，等于没准备。** – Sitting the exam without revising is as good as not preparing.
- **便宜不等于不好。** – Cheap doesn't mean bad.

How it works. 等于 *děngyú* "equals" in maths, and in argument "amounts to, is as good as". 就 before it makes the conclusion stronger. 不等于 rejects a hasty equation.

他是我的老师	沉默等于同意
是 identifies	等于: the same effect or value

Watch out

- 等于 in argument is a claim, not a fact: a listener can answer 沉默不等于同意.



7. 所谓 (the so-called ...)

Form: (person +) 所谓的 + noun · 所谓 X，就是 + definition

- **他所谓的近路，比大路还远。** *Tā suǒwèi de jìnlù …* – His so-called shortcut was even longer than the main road.
- **这就是你所谓的“ 很便宜 ”?** – So this is what you call “very cheap”?
- **所谓“ 低碳 ”，就是减少二氧化碳排放。** – “Low-carbon” means reducing CO_2 emissions.

How it works. 所谓 *suǒwèi* “what is called” has two uses. With someone’s words (他所谓的 …), it is often doubtful or ironic: “so-called”. In the frame 所谓 X，就是 …, it neutrally sets up a definition, typical of essays and explanations.

这种花叫做牡丹	所谓幸福，就是 ……	他所谓的朋友
names (neutral)	defines for discussion	doubts the label

Watch out

- 你所谓的朋友 can sound sharply critical: use it with care about people.

所谓(的): so-called



8. 宁可 … ，也 … (would rather)

Form: subject + 宁可 + A，也不 + B · 宁可 A，也要 B

- **我宁可走路回家，也不坐那么挤的车。** *Wǒ nìngkě zǒulù huí jiā, yě bú zuò …* – I'd rather walk home than take such a crowded bus.
- **他宁可饿着，也不吃垃圾食品。** – He'd rather go hungry than eat junk food.
- **宁可少睡一点儿，也要把工作做完。** – I'll get less sleep if I have to, but the work will get done.

How it works. 宁可 *nìngkě* (宁 = *nìng*) chooses A, often a sacrifice, over B, which is even less acceptable (也不 B). Or it accepts the sacrifice A to achieve B (也要 B). 宁愿 is a close synonym.

宁可 A，也不 B	与其 A，不如 B
firmly choose A (the sacrifice)	B is the better choice than A
宁可走路，也不坐挤的车	与其在家等，不如出去找

Watch out

- The second clause needs 也: *wrong:* 宁可走路，不坐车 → 宁可走路，也不坐车.

宁可 A，也不 B: rather A than B



9. 不是 … ，就是 … (either … or …)

Form: 不是 A，就是 B

- **这里的春天不是刮风，就是下雨。** *Bú shì guā fēng, jiù shì xià yǔ.* – Spring here is either windy or rainy.
- **这个时间他不是在图书馆，就是在食堂。** – At this time he's either in the library or the canteen.
- **你不是迟到，就是早退！** – You're always either late or leaving early!

How it works. 不是 A，就是 B "if not A, then B" says only these two possibilities exist. It often describes a frustrating habit, or makes a confident guess.

不是 A，就是 B	不是 A，而是 B	或者 A，或者 B
either A or B	not A but B (a correction)	offers a choice
不是刮风，就是下雨	他不是老师，而是医生	或者你来，或者我去

Watch out

- Don't confuse 就是 with 而是: they mean completely different things here.



10. 一面 … ，一面 … (two things at once)

Form: subject + 一面 + action A，一面 + action B

- **他一面开车，一面跟乘客聊天。** *Tā yímiàn kāichē, yímiàn gēn chéngkè liáotiān.* – He chats with his passengers as he drives.
- **他一面上大学，一面打工。** – He studies at university and works part-time.
- **老师一面批评他，一面鼓励他。** – The teacher criticised him and encouraged him at the same time.

How it works. 一面 …… 一面 …… is a slightly more written 一边 …… 一边 ……: one subject does two things at the same time, in the moment or over a longer period.

一边 / 一面	一方面 …… 一方面 ……	既 …… 又 ……
two actions at once	two aspects or reasons	two qualities (既聪明又努力)

Watch out

- Use action verbs with one subject; for qualities use 既 …… 又 …….



11. 不但 …，甚至连 … 也 … (not only …, even …)

Form: 不但 A，甚至连 B 也 / 都 …

- **他不但忘了带笔，甚至连准考证也忘了。** *Shènzhì lián zhǔnkǎozhèng yě wàng le.* – He forgot not only his pen but even his admission ticket.
- **这个问题不但学生不懂，甚至连老师也说不清楚。** – Not only do the students not get this; even the teacher can't explain it clearly.
- **他忙得不但没吃饭，甚至连水都没喝。** – He was so busy he didn't eat, or even drink any water.

How it works. The sentence builds to a climax. A is the first point; B is the extreme, unexpected one. 甚至 "even" and 连 …… 也 / 都 together make B stand out.

不但 A，而且 B	不但 A，甚至连 B 也
adds a second point of similar weight	adds a surprising extreme

Watch out

- Order: 甚至 → 连 → B → 也 / 都 (*wrong:* 连甚至老师也).
- B must be stronger than A, or the climax falls flat.

不但 ...，甚至连 ...: not only ..., even ...



12. 要 + Verb + 就 + Verb (if you're going to, do it right)

Form: 要 + verb + 就 + (adverb) + same verb

- **要学就好好学。** *Yào xué jiù hǎohāo xué.* – If you're going to learn it, learn it properly.
- **要买就买质量好的。** – If you're buying one, buy a good one.
- **要说就说清楚。** – If you're going to say it, say it clearly.
- **要去就早点儿去。** – If you're going, go early.

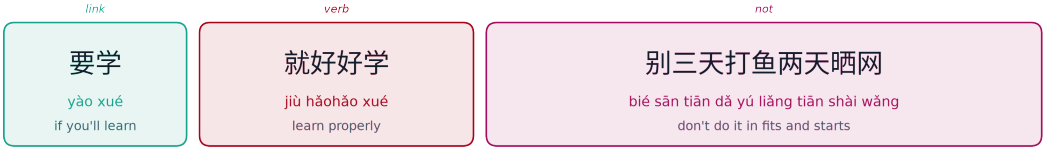
How it works. This spoken pattern gives firm advice: if you're doing it at all, do it properly or now. The same verb repeats, and the second usually carries a standard (好好, 清楚, 早点儿, 好的). It can sound impatient. The idiom 三天打鱼两天晒网 describes doing things in fits and starts, the habit this advice criticises.

要去就早点儿去	想去就去
if you go, do it properly	go if you like (freedom)

Watch out

- Repeat the same verb: *wrong:* 要学就好好练 → 要学就好好学.

要 ...就 ...: if you're going to, then ...



13. Verb + 就 + Verb (indifference / a shrug)

Form: X + 就 + same X (+ 了 / 吧)

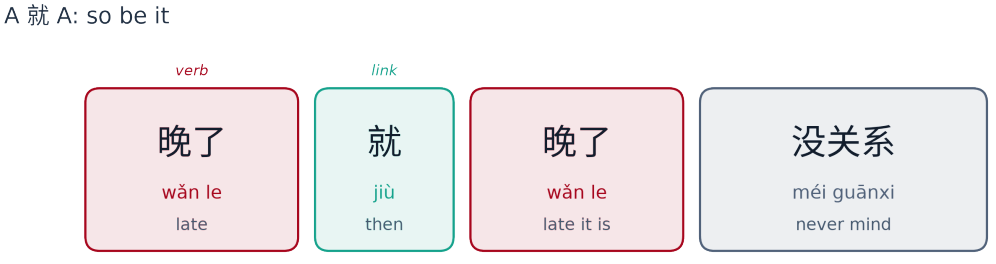
- **晚了就晚了，没关系。** *Wǎn le jiù wǎn le, méi guānxi.* – So you're late; it doesn't matter.
- **丢了就丢了，再买一个吧。** – If it's lost, it's lost; just buy another.
- **贵就贵吧，质量好就行。** – So it's expensive; as long as the quality is good.
- **去就去，谁怕谁！** – Fine, let's go. Who's scared?

How it works. Repeating the same word around 就 accepts a fact and moves on: so be it. It can sound relaxed (没关系) or defiant (谁怕谁); the next clause and the tone show which. 了 marks a fact that has happened (丢了就丢了); 吧 accepts a situation (贵就贵吧).

算了	X 就 X
forget it (general)	names the fact you accept: 输了就输了

Watch out

- Repeat exactly: *wrong:* 贵就便宜吧 → 贵就贵吧.



14. 少不了 (can't do without)

Form: A + 少不了 + B · 少不了 + (要) + verb

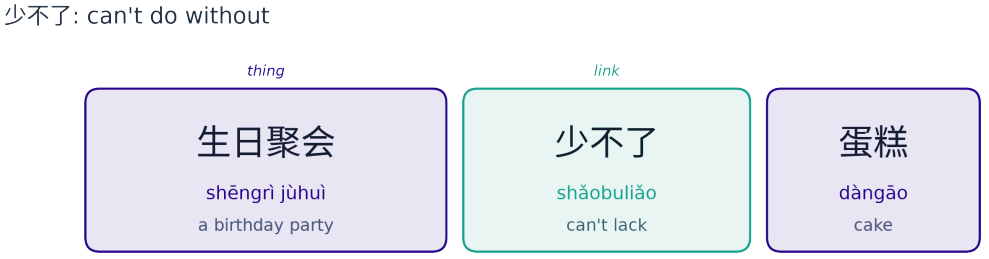
- **生日聚会少不了蛋糕。** *Shēngrì jùhuì shǎobuliǎo dàngāo.* – No birthday party is complete without cake.
- **过年少不了饺子。** – You can't have New Year without dumplings.
- **他是主角，少不了他。** – He's the lead; we can't do without him.
- **这么做，少不了要挨批评。** – Do it like that and you're bound to be criticised.

How it works. 少不了 *shǎobuliǎo* (了 = *liǎo*, as in 吃不了) means B can't be missing: it's essential or always there. Before a verb, it means something is bound to happen.

少不了	离不开	用不着
can't be missing	depend on (孩子离不开妈妈)	no need for

Watch out

- The essential thing **follows** 少不了: *wrong:* 蛋糕少不了生日聚会 → 生日聚会少不了蛋糕.



15. 无 ... 可 ... (have no ... to ...)

Form: 无 + noun + 可 + verb (fixed four-character phrases)

- **我已经无话可说了。** *Wǒ yǐjīng wú huà kě shuō le.* – I've nothing more to say.
- **下着大雨，我们无处可去。** – It was pouring and we had nowhere to go.
- **周末他无事可做。** – He had nothing to do at the weekend.

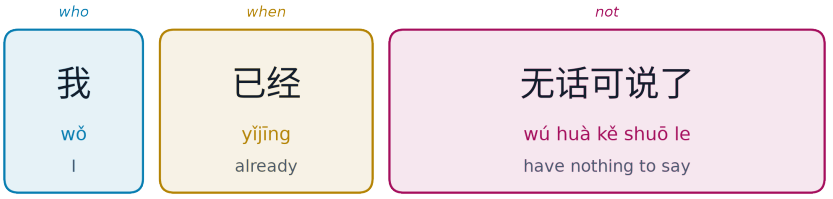
How it works. 无 X 可 V "there is no X to V" is the literary form of 没有 X 可以 V. It is compact and strong, and mostly fixed.

Phrase	Meaning
无话可说	nothing to say
无处可去	nowhere to go
无事可做	nothing to do
无家可归	homeless
无路可走	no way out

Watch out

- Nothing goes inside: *wrong:* 无话的可说 → 无话可说.
- In casual speech, 没话说 / 没地方去 sound more natural.

无 … 可 …: nothing to …



16. Action，好 + Purpose (so that)

Form: action，好 + (让 / 能) + purpose

- **你走以前留个便条，好让他知道你去哪儿了。** *Hǎo ràng tā zhīdào.* – Leave a note before you go, so he knows where you are.
- **把电话号码写下来，好随时联系。** – Write the number down so we can get in touch any time.
- **我早点儿睡，好明天早起。** – I'll go to bed early so I can get up early tomorrow.

How it works. In this spoken pattern, 好 *hǎo* starts the second clause and means "so that, to make it possible". The action comes first and the purpose second. 以便 is the formal equivalent.

为了明天早起，我早点儿睡	我早点儿睡，好明天早起
purpose first (为了)	action first, purpose after (好 / 以便)

Watch out

- This 好 isn't "good"; it only works at the start of the purpose clause, after the action.

…，好让 …: so that



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. Advanced 把 (把 + Obj + Verb + result)

1. Complete: "Please translate this sentence into English." 请把这句话翻译 …… 英文。

2. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 你把问题应该说清楚。
- B. 你把应该问题说清楚。
- C. 你应该说把问题清楚。
- D. 你应该把问题说清楚。

3. Build: "She cleaned the room spotless."

Put in order: 打扫得 / 她 / 干干净净。/ 把房间

4. True or false? 我把他看见了 is a natural sentence. If false, correct it.

5. Your manager hands back your draft with instructions. Use Advanced 把. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 从 ... 中 (from within)

6. Complete: "Learn from failure." 从失败 …… 学习。

7. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 从这些书选一本中。
- B. 选一个从中。
- C. 从这些书中选一本。
- D. 选从这些书中一本。

8. Build: "He gained a lot of experience from work."

Put in order: 得到了 / 他从工作中 / 很多经验。

9. True or false? 从中 can refer back to something just mentioned. If false, correct it.

10. Your coach talks to the team after a lost match. Use 从 … 中. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 在 + Time + 内 (within a span)

11. Complete (formal notice): "Pay within thirty days." 请在三十天 …… 付款。

12. Which means "after a week" (not before)?

- A. 一周以内
- B. 一周内
- C. 一周以后
- D. 在一周内

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

13. Build: “No smoking within the school.”

Put in order: 在学校内 / 吸烟。/ 不能

14. True or false? 完成在三天内 is the normal word order. If false, correct it.

15. The online shop promises fast delivery in its advert. Use 在 + Time + 内. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 4. 跟 / 和 ... 有关的 + Noun (related to)

16. Complete: “This matter is related to him.” 这件事跟他 ……。

17. Which phrase is correct?

- A. 书跟历史有关的
- B. 有关的跟历史书
- C. 跟历史有关的书
- D. 跟有关历史的书

18. Build: “His illness is related to stress.”

Put in order: 跟压力 / 有关。/ 他的病

19. True or false? 这跟我没有关系 means “This has nothing to do with me.” If false, correct it.

20. You are writing about air pollution and go to the library. Use 跟 / 和 … 有关的 + Noun. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 5. N1 + 不比 + N2 + Adj (no more ... than)

21. Rebut: “My room is no smaller than yours.” 我的房间 …… 比你的小。

22. Which says clearly that A is shorter than B?

- A. A 跟 B 一样高。
- B. A 比 B 不高。
- C. A 没有 B 高。
- D. A 不比 B 高。

23. Build: “Today is no colder than yesterday.”

Put in order: 不比 / 昨天 / 今天 / 冷。

24. True or false? 弟弟不比哥哥高 means the younger brother is definitely shorter. If false, correct it.

25. Your friend thinks the expensive brand is much better. You think it’s no better than the cheap one. Use N1 + 不比 + N2 + Adj. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 6. A 等于 B (equals / amounts to)

26. Complete: “Ten minus four equals six.” 十减四 …… 六。

27. What does 贵不等于好 mean?

- A. Expensive equals good.
- B. Expensive is not good.
- C. Expensive doesn’t mean good.
- D. Good things are expensive.

28. Build: “Wasting time is the same as wasting your life.”

Put in order: 浪费 / 浪费时间 / 生命。/ 就等于

29. True or false? 等于 can express that two things have the same effect. If false, correct it.

30. Your friend didn’t object when you suggested the plan. Use A 等于 B. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 7. 所谓 (the so-called ...)

31. Complete the definition: “What is called ’low-carbon’ means reducing emissions.” …… 低碳，就是减少排放。

32. What does 这就是你所谓的 “ 好主意 ”? suggest?

- A. The speaker admires the idea.
- B. The speaker is asking for an idea.
- C. The speaker is defining a term.
- D. The speaker doubts the idea is good.

33. Build: “Happiness is doing what you love.”

Put in order: 喜欢的事。/ 做自己 / 所谓幸福 / ，就是

34. True or false? 叫做 is the neutral way to name something. If false, correct it.

35. Your friend promised a quick route home; it took twice as long. Use 所谓. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 8. 宁可 ... ，也 ... (would rather)

36. Complete: “I’d rather stay at home than go out in this rain.” 我宁可待在家里，…… 不在这么大的雨里出去。

37. How is 宁 read in 宁可?

- A. nìng
- B. nīng
- C. nǐng
- D. níng

38. Build: “He’d rather go hungry than eat junk food.”

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Put in order: 也不吃 / 他宁可饿着 / 垃圾食品。/ ，

39. True or false? 与其 A 不如 B recommends B. If false, correct it.

40. Your friend suggests taking the crowded night bus. You'd rather walk an hour. Use 宁可 … ，也 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 9. 不是 ... ，就是 ... (either ... or ...)

41. Complete: "At weekends he either sleeps or plays games." 他周末不是睡觉，…… 打游戏。

42. What does 他不是老师，而是医生 mean?

- A. He isn't a teacher; he's a doctor.
- B. He is either a teacher or a doctor.
- C. He is neither.
- D. He is both a teacher and a doctor.

43. Build: "He's either in the library or the canteen."

Put in order: ， / 就是 / 在食堂。/ 他不是在图书馆

44. True or false? 不是 … 就是 … often describes a habit or a frustrating pattern. If false, correct it.

45. You complain about the weather in your city in spring. Use 不是 … ，就是 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 10. 一面 ... ，一面 ... (two things at once)

46. Complete: "She works while studying for a master's." 她一面工作，…… 读研究生。

47. Which describes two reasons, not two simultaneous actions?

- A. 一面 … 一面 …
- B. 一边 … 一边 …
- C. 一方面 … 一方面 …
- D. 又 … 又 …

48. Build: "He goes to university and works part-time."

Put in order: ，一面 / 上大学 / 他一面 / 打工。

49. True or false? 一面 … 一面 … is more formal than 一边 … 一边 …. If false, correct it.

50. Your uncle is a taxi driver who loves to tell stories while he drives. Use 一面 … ，一面 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 11. 不但 …，甚至连 … 也 … (not only …, even …)

51. Complete: “He not only forgot his pen, he even forgot his ticket.” 他不但忘了带笔，甚至 …… 准考证也忘了。

52. Which order is correct?

- A. 老师甚至也连不知道。
- B. 连甚至老师也不知道。
- C. 甚至老师连也不知道。
- D. 甚至连老师也不知道。

53. Build: “Even the teacher can’t explain it clearly.”

Put in order: 说不清楚。 / 连老师 / 也 / 甚至

54. True or false? The B item in this pattern should be the most surprising one. If false, correct it.

55. Your roommate had a terrible morning before the exam. Use 不但 …，甚至连 … 也 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 12. 要 + Verb + 就 + Verb (if you’re going to, do it right)

56. Complete: “If you’re going to learn, learn properly.” 要学 …… 好好学。

57. Which gives permission rather than advice?

- A. 想走就走吧。
- B. 要做就做完。
- C. 要说就说清楚。
- D. 要买就买好的。

58. Build: “If you’re going to buy one, buy a good one.”

Put in order: 就买 / 要买 / 质量好的。

59. True or false? 要 … 就 … is mainly used in formal writing. If false, correct it.

60. Your friend wants to learn the guitar but only practises five minutes a week. Use 要 + Verb + 就 + Verb. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 13. Verb + 就 + Verb (indifference / a shrug)

61. Accept it: “If it’s expensive, so be it – I like it.” 贵就 …… 吧，我喜欢。

62. What does 输了就输了，下次再来 express?

- A. A plan to cheat
- B. Surprise at winning
- C. Great disappointment
- D. Accepting the loss and moving on

63. Build: “If it’s lost, it’s lost; buy another one.”

Put in order: 一个吧。 / 丢了 / ， 再买 / 就丢了

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

64. True or false? 去就去，谁怕谁！ sounds defiant. If false, correct it.

65. Your friend apologises for being five minutes late. You really don't mind. Use Verb + 就 + Verb. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 14. 少不了 (can't do without)

66. Complete: "Chinese New Year isn't complete without dumplings." 过年 …… 饺子。

67. What does 这么做，少不了要挨批评 mean?

- A. You're bound to be criticised.
- B. Criticise less.
- C. Criticism is missing.
- D. You won't be criticised.

68. Build: "He's the lead; we can't do without him."

Put in order: 少不了 / 他。/ 他是主角 / ，

69. True or false? 孩子离不开妈妈 means the child depends on its mother. If false, correct it.

70. Your family is planning grandma's 80th birthday party. Use 少不了. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 15. 无 … 可 … (have no … to …)

71. Complete: "I have nothing to say." 我无话 …… 说。

72. Match each phrase to its meaning.

- (1) 无处可去
- (2) 无事可做
- (3) 无家可归
- A. homeless
- B. nothing to do
- C. nowhere to go

73. Which is the spoken equivalent of 无话可说?

- A. 没有什么话说可以。
- B. 有话可以说的。
- C. 无什么可以说。
- D. 没有什么可以说的。

74. True or false? 无话可说 is more formal than 没话说. If false, correct it.

75. After a long argument, your friend shrugs and goes quiet. Use 无 … 可 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 16. Action，好 + Purpose (so that)

76. Complete: “Write down the address so you can check it any time.” 把地址写下来，…… 随时查。

77. In 早点儿睡，好明天早起, what does 好 mean?

- A. very
- B. so that
- C. finished
- D. good

78. Build: “Leave a note so that he knows.”

Put in order: 他知道。/ ， / 好让 / 留个便条

79. True or false? 以便 is a formal equivalent of this 好. If false, correct it.

80. You are going out and your flatmate will come home later. Use Action，好 + Purpose. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

81. Choose 宁可 …… 也 …… or 不是 …… 就是 ……: 他周末 …… 睡觉，…… 打游戏。/ 我 …… 走路，…… 不坐他的车。

82. What does 我不比你高 mean?

83. Say “Finish the report within three days.”

84. Say “If you’re going to do it, do it well.”

85. Find and fix the problem. A classmate writes 我把这本书看. Why is it incomplete?

86. Use it yourself. Say you would rather walk than wait, and that the waiting time is longer than you expected.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. Advanced 把 (把 + Obj + Verb + result)

1. 成

翻译成 = translate into (a change).

2. D. 你应该把问题说清楚。

你应该把问题说清楚 is right: modal verbs and negatives (应该, 要, 不) go before 把, not between 把 and the verb.

3. 她把房间打扫得干干净净。

把 + object + verb + 得 + result.

4. False.

Perception verbs like 看见 don't take 把.

5. Model answer: 请把第三段改得短一点儿，再把图表放到最后。

Check your answer:

- 没 / 不 / 别 / 能 / 要 / 应该 go before 把: 你应该把问题说清楚, not 你把问题应该说清楚.
- Perception and feeling verbs (看见, 知道, 喜欢) don't take 把.

■ 2. 从 ... 中 (from within)

6. 中

从 + noun + 中.

7. C. 从这些书中选一本。

从这些书中选一本 is right: the 从 … 中 phrase comes before the verb, and 中 closes the phrase directly after the noun.

8. 他从工作中得到了很多经验。

Subject + 从 … 中 + verb + object.

9. True.

并从中学到了很多 – learned a lot from it.

10. Model answer: 我们要从失败中吸取教训。

Check your answer:

- Say 从失败中学习, not 从失败学习 (for "from within, through").
- The 从 … 中 phrase goes before the verb: 从中选一个, not 选一个从中.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 3. 在 + Time + 内 (within a span)

11. 内

在 + time + 内 = within.

12. C. 一周以后

一周以后 means "after a week". 一周内, 一周以内 and 在一周内 all mean "within a week", i.e. before the week is over.

13. 在学校内不能吸烟。

在 + place + 内 + rule.

14. False.

The time phrase goes before the verb: 在三天内完成.

15. Model answer: 我们保证三天内送到。

Check your answer:

- 内 is formal; in speech, 三天之内 or 三天以内 also give a deadline. 三天里 is different: it means "during those three days" (这三天里下了两次雨).
- The phrase goes before the verb: 在三天内完成, not 完成在三天内.

■ 4. 跟 / 和 ... 有关的 + Noun (related to)

16. 有关

A 跟 B 有关.

17. C. 跟历史有关的书

The whole 跟 … 有关的 phrase comes before the noun.

18. 他的病跟压力有关。

A 跟 B 有关.

19. True.

没有关系 negates the connection.

20. Model answer: 我借了几本跟环境有关的书。

Check your answer:

- The whole phrase comes before the noun with 的: 跟环境有关的书, not 书跟环境有关的.
- Negative: 跟他无关 / 跟他没有关系 – "nothing to do with him".

■ 5. N1 + 不比 + N2 + Adj (no more ... than)

21. 不

A 不比 B + Adj.

22. C. A 没有 B 高。

没有 gives the lower degree here; 不比 denies a higher degree and can allow equality or a lower degree.

23. 今天不比昨天冷。

A 不比 B + Adj.

24. False.

It only says he isn't taller; they may be the same height.

25. Model answer: 这个牌子不比那个好。

Check your answer:

- A 没有 B 高 = A is less tall than B (clearly shorter).
- A 不比 B 高 denies that A is taller. A may be equally tall or shorter; the phrase does not establish equality.

■ 6. A 等于 B (equals / amounts to)

26. 等于

等于 = equals.

27. C. Expensive doesn't mean good.

不等于 = is not the same as.

28. 浪费时间就等于浪费生命。

A 就等于 B.

29. True.

沉默等于同意 – silence amounts to consent.

30. Model answer: 你不说话就等于同意了。

Check your answer:

- **不等于** = is not the same as: 便宜不等于不好 – "Cheap doesn't mean bad."
- In argument, 等于 often follows 就: 不说就等于同意 – "Saying nothing is the same as agreeing."

■ 7. 所谓 (the so-called ...)

31. 所谓

所谓 X，就是 … introduces a definition.

32. D. The speaker doubts the idea is good.

所谓 can be ironic, "so-called": 这就是你所谓的 " 好主意 "? "So this is your so-called good idea?" The speaker doubts it is good.

33. 所谓幸福，就是做自己喜欢的事。

所谓 X，就是 ….

34. True.

所谓 often adds doubt or sets up a definition.

35. Model answer: 他所谓的近路，比大路还远。

Check your answer:

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- 你所谓的朋友 can sound very critical; use it carefully about people.
- For a neutral definition, 所谓 X，就是 … is the standard frame.

■ 8. 宁可 … ，也 … (would rather)

36. 也

宁可 A，也不 B.

37. A. nìng

In 宁可 ("would rather") 宁 is read nìng, fourth tone: nìngkě. The second-tone níng is used in 安宁 and the name 南宁.

38. 他宁可饿着，也不吃垃圾食品。

宁可 A，也不 B.

39. True.

True. 与其 A 不如 B means "rather than A, better B": 与其等车，不如走路. The speaker recommends B.

40. Model answer: 我宁可走路回家，也不坐那么挤的车。

Check your answer:

- 宁 here is nìng (fourth tone), as in 宁可 / 宁愿.
- 宁可 usually goes after the subject: 我宁可 …, and the second clause usually has 也: 也不 / 也要.

■ 9. 不是 … ，就是 … (either … or …)

41. 就是

不是 A，就是 B.

42. A. He isn't a teacher; he's a doctor.

而是 corrects: not A but B.

43. 他不是在图书馆，就是在食堂。

不是 A，就是 B.

44. True.

True. 不是 A 就是 B ("if it's not A, it's B") often describes an annoying pattern: 不是刮风，就是下雨 "If it isn't windy, it's raining."

45. Model answer: 这里的春天不是刮风，就是下雨。

Check your answer:

- 不是 A，而是 B = not A but B (a correction): 他不是老师，而是医生 ("He's not a teacher but a doctor"). Different meaning!
- 不是 A，就是 B = either A or B (two options, one of them true).

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 10. 一面 … ，一面 … (two things at once)

46. 一面

一面 A，一面 B.

47. C. 一方面 … 一方面 …

一方面 gives aspects or reasons.

48. 他一面上大学，一面打工。

一面 A，一面 B.

49. True.

True. 一面 … 一面 … is more formal and written; 一边 … 一边 … is the everyday form for doing two things at once.

50. Model answer: 他一面开车，一面跟乘客聊天。

Check your answer:

- Both actions belong to one subject: 他一面 … 一面 ….
- Use action verbs; for two qualities use 既 … 又 ….

■ 11. 不但 …，甚至连 … 也 … (not only …, even …)

51. 连

甚至连 B 也 ….

52. D. 甚至连老师也不知道。

The order is 甚至 + 连 + B + 也/都: 甚至连老师也不知道 “Even the teacher didn’t know.” 甚至 comes first and 连 directly before the surprising item.

53. 甚至连老师也说不清楚。

甚至连 B 也 + verb.

54. True.

True. B is the climax, the least expected case: if even the teacher didn’t know, nobody would.

55. Model answer: 他不但忘了带笔，甚至连准考证也忘了。

Check your answer:

- 甚至 comes before 连, and 也 / 都 after B: 甚至连他也 …, not 连甚至他也 ….
- B should be stronger than A; a weaker B makes the sentence fall flat.

■ 12. 要 + Verb + 就 + Verb (if you’re going to, do it right)

56. 就

要 V 就 V.

57. A. 想走就走吧。

想 V 就 V gives permission: 想走就走吧 “Feel free to leave if you want.” 要 V 就 V gives firm advice: if you do it, do it properly.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

58. 要买就买质量好的。

要 V 就 V + object.

59. False.

False. 要 … 就 … is spoken and firm (要买就买好的 "If you're buying, buy a good one"). It is not a formal written pattern.

60. Model answer: 要学就好好学，别三天打鱼两天晒网。

Check your answer:

- Repeat the same verb: 要学就好好学 is the usual pattern.
- The tone is firm advice or impatience; it is spoken.

■ 13. Verb + 就 + Verb (indifference / a shrug)

61. 贵

The same word repeats: 贵就贵.

62. D. Accepting the loss and moving on

X 就 X accepts a fact and moves on: 输了就输了，下次再来 "If we lost, we lost; we'll try again next time." It is not disappointment or surprise.

63. 丢了就丢了，再买一个吧。

X 就 X, then the next step.

64. True.

The tone can be relaxed or defiant.

65. Model answer: 晚了就晚了，没关系。

Check your answer:

- It can sound relaxed (没关系) or defiant (谁怕谁); context and voice tell which.
- Repeat exactly the same word: 贵就贵吧, not 贵就便宜吧.

■ 14. 少不了 (can't do without)

66. 少不了

A 少不了 B = B is essential.

67. A. You're bound to be criticised.

少不了 can mean "bound to, can't avoid": 这么做，少不了要挨批评 "Do it this way and you're bound to be criticised." Its other sense is "can't do without".

68. 他是主角，少不了他。

少不了 + essential person.

69. True.

True. 离不开 means "can't be without, depends on": 孩子离不开妈妈 "The child can't be without its mother."

70. Model answer: 生日聚会少不了蛋糕。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Check your answer:

- 了 in 少不了 is liǎo, as in 吃不了.
- The opposite is 少得了 (rare); for "not needed", say 不需要 or 用不着.

■ 15. 无 … 可 … (have no … to …)

71. 可

无 + noun + 可 + verb.

72. (1) C: 无处可去 = nowhere to go; (2) B: 无事可做 = nothing to do; (3) A: 无家可归 = homeless

无 X 可 V = no X to V.

73. D. 没有什么可以说的。

没有 … 可以 … is the everyday form.

74. True.

True. 无 … 可 … comes from literary Chinese (无话可说, 无家可归), so it is more formal than everyday 没话说.

75. Model answer: 我已经无话可说了。

Check your answer:

- In speech, say 没有话说 / 没地方去; 无 … 可 … is more formal.
- Keep the order 无 + noun + 可 + verb; do not add 的 or 了 inside: 无话可说, not 无话的可说.

■ 16. Action，好 + Purpose (so that)

76. 好

Action，好 + purpose.

77. B. so that

Here 好 introduces the purpose.

78. 留个便条，好让他知道。

Action，好让 + person + verb.

79. True.

Both introduce a purpose after the action.

80. Model answer: 你走以前留个便条，好让他知道你去哪儿了。

Check your answer:

- The action comes first and 好 + purpose second; this 好 is not "good".
- It is spoken and practical; in writing, 以便 is the formal equivalent.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ Mixed practice

81. 他周末不是睡觉，就是打游戏 (one or the other)。我宁可走路，也不坐他的车 (I would rather).

82. I am not taller than you: we are about the same, or you may be taller. It rejects a claim; it is not the same as 我没有你高.

83. 请在三天内完成报告。在 + time + 内 = within.

84. 要做就做好。要 V 就 V: if you do it at all, do it properly.

85. 把 needs a result after the verb: 我把这本书看完了, or 我把这本书看了两遍.

86. Model answer. 我宁可走路，也不想再等了。等的时间比我想的长多了。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one sentence with 不是 …… 就是 …… about your weekend.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Complex sentence patterns

HSK 5

难怪 and 怪不得 both mean “no wonder”: you have just learned the reason for something that surprised you. 难怪 is a little more formal. The reason often comes first: 他是北京人，难怪普通话这么好.

At a glance

- **1.** 怪不得 – no wonder: 怪不得她英语说得这么好，原来她在伦敦长大。
- **2.** 难怪 – no wonder: 难怪他没来，原来他病了。

1. 怪不得 (no wonder)

Form: 怪不得 + fact，原来 + reason · reason，怪不得 + fact

- **怪不得她英语说得这么好，原来她在伦敦长大。** *Guàibude …* – No wonder her English is so good; she grew up in London.
- **他昨天熬夜了，怪不得今天这么累。** – He stayed up late last night; no wonder he’s so tired today.
- **原来下雪了，怪不得这么冷。** – So it’s snowing; no wonder it’s so cold.

How it works. 怪不得 *guàibude* means the same as 难怪: something odd now makes sense. It starts its clause (*wrong:* 他怪不得 ……), and the reason must be known or given nearby.

怪不得 / 难怪 + fact	这件事怪不得他
no wonder	you can’t blame him for this

Watch out

- With a person as the object, 怪不得 can mean “can’t blame”: read the whole sentence.



exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

2. 难怪 (no wonder)

Form: 难怪 + observation，(原来 + reason) · 原来 + reason，难怪 + observation

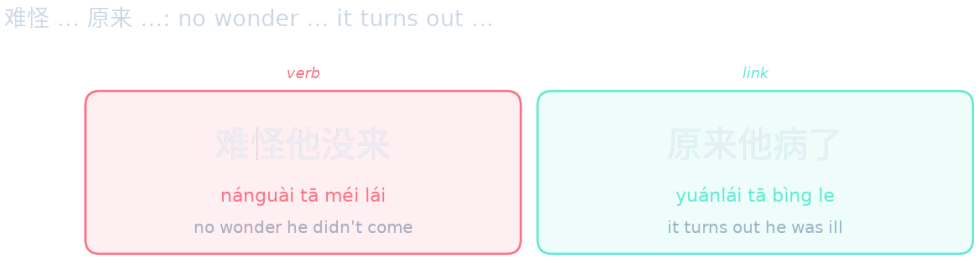
- **难怪他没来，原来病了。** *Nánguài tā méi lái, yuánlái bìng le.* – No wonder he didn't come; it turns out he was ill.
- **原来他考了第一名，难怪这么高兴。** – So he came first; no wonder he's so happy.
- **下雪了，难怪这么冷。** – It's snowing; no wonder it's so cold.

How it works. 难怪 *nánguài* "no wonder" reacts to a fact that puzzled you, now that a reason is known. The reason can come before or after, often with 原来 "so, it turns out". For a past absence, use 没来 (不来 means he won't come).

难怪他没来	他为什么没来?
it makes sense now (reason known)	asks for the reason

Watch out

- 难怪 shows the speaker is satisfied, not that the reason is proven: a guess stays a guess.
- Without any reason in view, ask a question instead.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 怪不得 (no wonder)

1. Complete: "So it snowed – no wonder it's so cold." 原来下雪了，…… 这么冷。

2. What does 这件事怪不得他 mean?

- A. No wonder he did this.
- B. You can't blame him for this.
- C. He is strange.
- D. He doesn't understand.

3. Build: "He stayed up late; no wonder he's tired."

Put in order: ， / 今天这么累。/ 怪不得 / 他昨天熬夜了

4. True or false? 难怪 and 怪不得 can both mean "no wonder". If false, correct it.

5. Your classmate speaks perfect English, and today you learn she grew up in London. Use 怪不得. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 难怪 (no wonder)

6. No wonder he didn't come; he was ill. …… 他没来，原来病了。

7. Which word usually introduces the reason?

- A. 虽然
- B. 原来
- C. 难道
- D. 所以

8. Choose the best ending: 外面下雪了，……

- A. 难怪下雨。
- B. 难怪我很热。
- C. 难怪这么冷。
- D. 难怪我们吧。

9. True or false? 难怪他没来 proves that he was ill. If false, correct it.

10. Say in Chinese: "So he came first; no wonder he's so happy."

11. No wonder his Chinese is so good.

Put in order: 他的中文 / 难怪 / 说得 / 这么好。

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

12. Add 难怪 or 怪不得: 他在中国住了十年，…… 中文这么好。

13. Find and fix the problem. A friend studied all night, and someone says 怪不得他这么累. A classmate thinks 怪不得 blames the friend. Correct it.

14. Use it yourself. The library door is locked, and you learn it is closed today. React with 难怪.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 怪不得 (no wonder)

1. 怪不得

怪不得 + the fact that now makes sense.

2. B. You can't blame him for this.

怪不得 + person = can't blame.

3. 他昨天熬夜了，怪不得今天这么累。

Reason, then 怪不得 + fact.

4. True.

They are synonyms in this sense.

5. Model answer: 怪不得她英语说得这么好，原来她在伦敦长大。

Check your answer:

- 怪不得 only makes sense when the reason is known or given; without it, the listener is left puzzled.
- It usually starts its clause: 怪不得他这么累.

■ 2. 难怪 (no wonder)

6. 难怪

难怪 + fact that now makes sense.

7. B. 原来

原来 = so, it turns out.

8. C. 难怪这么冷。

The fact must fit the reason.

9. False.

It shows the speaker accepts a reason; a guess stays a guess.

10. 原来他考了第一名，难怪这么高兴。

Reason with 原来, then 难怪.

11. 难怪他的中文说得这么好。

难怪 + fact.

■ Mixed practice

12. 他在中国住了十年，难怪（怪不得）中文这么好。Both work: the reason comes first, then the surprise it explains.

13. 怪不得 means "no wonder": now we know why he is so tired. It does not blame anyone.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

14. Model answer. 原来图书馆今天不开门，难怪门锁着。
Review later. Tomorrow, give a reason and react with 怪不得 or 难怪.

Either... or...

HSK 5

或者 ……，或者 …… offers two possibilities: "either … or …". It is used in statements and plans, not in questions: 或者坐火车，或者坐飞机，都可以. For a choice question, use 还是.

或者 ... ，或者 ... (either ... or ...)

Form: 或者 A，或者 B (in statements and suggestions)

- **或者星期二，或者星期四，我都有空。** *Huòzhě xīngqī'èr, huòzhě xīngqīsì, wǒ dōu yǒu kòng.* – Either Tuesday or Thursday; I'm free on both.
- **周末我或者看书，或者去游泳。** *Zhōumò wǒ huòzhě kàn shū, huòzhě qù yóuyǒng.* – At weekends I either read or go swimming.
- **或者你来，或者我去。** *Huòzhě nǐ lái, huòzhě wǒ qù.* – Either you come here or I'll go there.
- **你可以或者打电话，或者发邮件。** *Nǐ kěyǐ huòzhě dǎ diànhuà, huòzhě fā yóujiàn.* – You can either phone or send an email.
- **午饭吃面条或者饺子都可以。** *Wǔfàn chī miàntiáo huòzhě jiǎozi dōu kěyǐ.* – Noodles or dumplings for lunch are both fine.
- **放假的时候，他或者回老家，或者去旅游，从来不待在学校。** *Fàngjià de shíhou, tā huòzhě huí lǎojiā, huòzhě qù lǚyóu, cónglái bù dāi zài xuéxiào.* – In the holidays he either goes back to his home town or travels; he never stays at school.

How it works. 或者 *huòzhě* "or" lists alternatives that are all acceptable, in a statement or a suggestion. Repeating it, 或者 A，或者 B, makes the choice clearer: "either A or B". It can join nouns (星期二, 星期四), verb phrases (看书, 去游泳) or whole clauses with their own subjects (你来, 我去). A single 或者 between two short items is enough: 面条或者饺子.

The sentence often ends with 都可以 / 都行 / 都有空, showing that either choice works. When the choice is in a *question*, Chinese uses 还是 instead.

Pattern	Use	Example
或者 …… 或者 ……	open options in a statement	或者打电话，或者发邮件。
还是	a choice in a question	你喝茶还是咖啡?
要么 …… 要么 ……	firm options, often an ultimatum	要么现在走，要么别走。
不是 …… 就是 ……	one of the two is surely true	他不是在家，就是在公司。

Watch out

- Questions use 还是: *wrong:* 你喝茶或者咖啡? → 你喝茶还是咖啡?
- Repeat the same word on both sides: *wrong:* 或者你来，要么我去 → 或者你来，或者我去.

- 或者 cannot end a sentence like English "…, or?": *wrong:* 我们明天去或者？ → 我们明天去还是后天去？

In a passage

> 老师说，期末的口语考试有两种方式：或者两个人一起做对话，或者一个人做三分钟的演讲。时间可以选星期三下午或者星期五上午。大家可以自己决定，但是要在下周一以前告诉老师。

Read and notice. What two choices do students have? Rewrite one choice as a question to a classmate with 还是.

或者 A，或者 B: either A or B

when		verb
或者星期二 huòzhě xīngqī'èr either Tuesday	或者星期四 huòzhě xīngqīsì or Thursday	我都有空 wǒ dōu yǒu kòng I'm free either way

Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Complete: "Either you come or I go – either is fine." 或者你来，…… 我去，都行。

2. Which is a question?

- A. 要么喝茶，要么喝咖啡。
- B. 你喝茶还是喝咖啡？
- C. 不是喝茶，就是喝咖啡。
- D. 或者喝茶，或者喝咖啡。

3. Build: "At weekends I either read or go swimming."

Put in order: ， 或者 / 或者看书 / 周末我 / 去游泳。

4. True or false? 要么 … 要么 … can sound like an ultimatum. If false, correct it.

5. Your manager asks when you can meet the client. Use 或者 … ， 或者 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Find and fix the problem. A notice offers 或者周六，或者周日. A classmate thinks people must come on both days. Correct it.

7. Use it yourself. Offer two ways to send a document, then ask which your partner

prefers.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 或者

或者 … 或者 ….

2. B. 你喝茶还是喝咖啡?

Questions with "or" use 还是.

3. 周末我或者看书，或者去游泳。

或者 A，或者 B.

4. True.

It is firmer than 或者 … 或者 ….

5. Model answer: 或者星期二，或者星期四，我都有空。

Check your answer:

- Questions use 还是: 你喝茶还是咖啡? ("Would you like tea or coffee?"), not 你或者喝茶或者喝咖啡?
- To say "it must be one of the two", 不是 … 就是 … is stronger: 他不是在家，就是在公司 – "He's either at home or at the office."

■ Mixed practice

6. 或者 …… 或者 …… gives two options: Saturday or Sunday, either is fine.

7. Model answer. 你或者发邮件，或者直接给我都可以。你想用哪种?

Review later. Tomorrow, explain to a partner when to use 或者 and when to use 还是.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Let alone...

HSK 5

Two ways to say "let alone". 别说 ……，就是 …… 也 …… first rules out the big thing, then says even the small thing is not possible; ……，更不用说 …… gives the small thing first and then the big one. Both make a strong point by comparing two cases.

At a glance

- **1.** 别说 … ，就是 … 也 … – let alone: 别说爬山了，就是走楼梯我也觉得累。
- **2.** 更不用说 – let alone / not to mention: 他连话都说不清楚，更不用说写字了。

1. 别说 ... ，就是 ... 也 ... (let alone)

Form: 别说 + harder case (了)，就是 / 连 + easier case + 也 / 都 + …

- **别说爬山了，就是走楼梯我也觉得累。** *Biéshuō pá shān le, jiùshì zǒu lóutī wǒ yě juéde lèi.* – Forget climbing mountains; even stairs tire me out.
- **这道题，别说老师，就是小学生也会做。** – Never mind a teacher, even a primary pupil could do this question.
- **别说外国人，连中国人也不一定知道。** – Never mind foreigners, even Chinese people may not know it.

How it works. 别说 "let alone, never mind" names the extreme case first. The easy test follows with 就是 / 连 … 也 / 都. If even the easy case fails, the extreme case obviously does; and when the easy case succeeds (小学生也会做), it works the same way.

别说 A，就是 B 也 ……	B 都 ……，更不用说 A 了
extreme case first	easy case first

Watch out

- Keep 也 / 都 in the second clause.
- Put the cases the right way round: 别说 + the bigger claim.



2. 更不用说 (let alone / not to mention)

Form: easier case (连 …… 都 / 也 …), 更不用说 + harder case + 了

- **他连话都说不清楚，更不用说写字了。** *Gèng búyòng shuō xiě zì le.* – He can't even talk clearly, let alone write.
- **这里的夏天很热，更不用说八月了。** – Summers here are hot, especially in August.
- **他会说英语、法语，更不用说中文了。** – He speaks English and French, not to mention Chinese.

How it works. 更不用说 "let alone, not to mention" comes **second**: the first clause states the basic case, and the case after 更不用说 follows even more obviously. It works with negative and positive statements; 了 usually ends it.

B……，更不用说 A 了	别说 A，就是 B 也 ……	……，何况 …… 呢?
easy case first	extreme case first	literary, rhetorical

Watch out

- 更不用说 follows the first clause: *wrong:* 更不用说写字，他连话都说不清楚 → 他连话都说不清楚，更不用说写字了.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 别说 … ，就是 … 也 … (let alone)

1. Complete: "Let alone a hundred yuan, I don't even have one." 别说一百块，…… 一块我也没有。

2. In 别说 A，就是 B 也不会, which is the more extreme case?

- A. Both equal
- B. A
- C. Neither
- D. B

3. Build: "Never mind foreigners, even Chinese people may not know."

Put in order: 连中国人 / 也不一定知道。/ 别说外国人 / ，

4. True or false? 更不用说 puts the extreme case at the end. If false, correct it.

5. A friend suggests climbing Mount Huashan. You get tired walking upstairs. Use 别说 … ，就是 … 也 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 更不用说 (let alone / not to mention)

6. Complete: "I can't even ride a bike, let alone drive." 我连自行车都不会骑，……开车了。

7. Which order is correct?

- A. 他更不用说跑步，连走路。
- B. 跑步更不用说了，走路他连。
- C. 他连走路都困难，更不用说跑步了。
- D. 更不用说跑步，他连走路都困难。

8. Build: "Summers here are hot, not to mention August."

Put in order: 更不用说 / ， / 八月了。/ 这里的夏天很热

9. True or false? 何况 is more literary than 更不用说. If false, correct it.

10. Your nephew is two years old and is learning to talk. Use 更不用说. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

11. Use 别说: I can't even say "hello" in French, let alone write a letter.

12. Use 更不用说: he can't even swim, let alone dive.

13. Find and fix the problem. A classmate writes 别说一个字，就是一本书他也看不懂 to say he can't read anything. What is wrong with the logic?

14. Use it yourself. Say he can't even write a short note, let alone a long report.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 别说 … ，就是 … 也 … (let alone)

1. 就是

别说 A，就是 B 也 ….

2. B. A

The extreme case follows 别说.

3. 别说外国人，连中国人也不一定知道。

别说 A，连 B 也 ….

4. True.

True. 更不用说 adds the more extreme case at the end: 大人都搬不动，更不用说孩子了 “Even adults can’t move it, let alone children.”

5. Model answer: 别说爬山了，就是走楼梯我也觉得累。

Check your answer:

- The item after 别说 is the more extreme one; the item after 就是 / 连 is the easier test.
- Keep 也 / 都 in the second clause: 就是 … 也 …, 连 … 都 ….

■ 2. 更不用说 (let alone / not to mention)

6. 更不用说

B…，更不用说 A 了.

7. C. 他连走路都困难，更不用说跑步了。

The easier case first, then 更不用说 + the extreme.

8. 这里的夏天很热，更不用说八月了。

B…，更不用说 A 了.

9. True.

何况 … 呢 often appears in writing.

10. Model answer: 他连话都说不清楚，更不用说写字了。

Check your answer:

- The clause before 更不用说 is the easier or more basic case; A after it is the extreme.
- Do not put 更不用说 at the start of the first clause: B…，更不用说 A.

■ Mixed practice

11. 别说用法语写信了，就是“ 你好 ”我也不会说。

12. 他连游泳都不会，更不用说潜水了。

13. With a negative, 别说 takes the harder case and 就是 …… 也 takes the easiest one: 别说一本书，就是一个字他也看不懂 (he can't read even one character, let alone a book).

14. Model answer. 别说长报告了，就是一张小纸条他也写不好。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one 更不用说 sentence about a skill.

Comparing similar adverbs

HSK 5

常常 and 经常 both mean "often". 经常 suggests something regular or repeated over a long time and can also be an adjective (经常的事); 常常 is a plain adverb. In most everyday sentences either works; the handout shows where only one fits.

常常 vs 经常 (often / regularly)

Form: subject + (time) + 常常 / 经常 + verb

- **我经常去健身房，周末也常常去游泳。** *Wǒ jīngcháng qù jiànshēnfáng, zhōumò yě chángcháng qù yóuyǒng.* – I go to the gym regularly, and at weekends I often swim too.
- **他周末经常加班。** *Tā zhōumò jīngcháng jiābān.* – He often works overtime at weekends.
- **我不常去电影院。** *Wǒ bù cháng qù diànyǐngyuàn.* – I don't go to the cinema much.
- **小时候，奶奶常常给我讲故事。** *Xiǎo shíhou, nǎinai chángcháng gěi wǒ jiǎng gùshi.* – When I was little, my grandma often told me stories.
- **这条路经常堵车，最好早点儿出发。** *Zhè tiáo lù jīngcháng dǔchē, zuìhǎo zǎo diǎnr chūfā.* – This road is often jammed; you'd better set off early.
- **下雨天往往人少。** *Xià yǔ tiān wǎngwǎng rén shǎo.* – On rainy days there tend to be fewer people.

How it works. 常常 *chángcháng* and 经常 *jīngcháng* both mean "often" and usually swap freely: they go after the subject (and after a time word) and before the verb. 经常 suggests something regular and repeated, so it is common for habits and recurring problems (经常加班, 经常堵车); 常常 is a little more spoken and warm, common in stories about the past.

The negatives differ: say 不常 or 不经常, never 不常常. Only 经常 works as an adjective before a noun: 经常性的检查 (regular checks). 往往 *wǎngwǎng* looks similar but means "tends to", describing a pattern under a condition.

	常常	经常	往往
often	✓	✓	tends to, under a condition
negative	不常	不经常	(rarely negated)
before a noun	–	经常性的问题	–
future plans	✓ 以后常常来	✓ 以后经常来	–
example	常常喝茶	经常喝茶	下雨天往往堵车

Watch out

- *wrong:* 不常常 → 不常 or 不经常.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- 往往 needs a pattern or condition and cannot describe a plan: *wrong:* 我明天往往去 → 我以后会经常去.
- Put the frequency word before the verb, not at the end: *wrong:* 我去健身房经常 → 我经常去健身房.

In a passage

> 我爸爸工作很忙，经常出差，一个月往往只能在家住十几天。小时候我常常问妈妈：爸爸什么时候回来？现在我长大了，明白了他的辛苦。他不常在家，但是每天晚上都会给我们打电话。

Read and notice. Find 经常, 常常, 往往 and 不常. Why does the writer use 往往 in the first sentence?

经常 / 常常: often



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Complete: “I don’t often go to the cinema.” 我不 …… 去电影院。

2. Which is the most natural way to say “not often”?

- A. 不经常
- B. 往往不
- C. 经常
- D. 常常不

3. Build: “He regularly works overtime at weekends.”

Put in order: 他周末 / 加班。/ 经常

4. True or false? 往往 usually describes what tends to happen in a situation, unlike plain 常常. If false, correct it.

5. A new friend asks about your exercise habits. Use 常常 or 经常. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Find and fix the problem. A classmate says 常常 means exactly three times a week. What can the word tell you?

7. Use it yourself. Say you often walk to school but take the bus when it rains.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 常

不常 or 不经常; 不常常 is not used.

2. A. 不经常

The negative of 经常 / 常常 is 不经常 or 不常.

3. 他周末经常加班。

Subject + time + 经常 + verb.

4. True.

True. 往往 describes what tends to happen in a situation: 下雨天往往堵车. 常常 can describe simple frequency or the future: 以后常常来.

5. Model answer: 我经常去健身房，周末也常常去游泳。

Check your answer:

- To say "not often", use 不常 or 不经常 (不常常 is rare).
- Both go before the verb, after the subject and time words: 他周末经常加班 – "He often works overtime on weekends."

■ Mixed practice

6. 常常 and 经常 say something happens often. They do not give an exact number.

7. Model answer. 我经常走路上学，下雨的时候就坐公共汽车。

Review later. Tomorrow, say one thing you do 经常 and one thing you do 有时候.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Comparing similar adverbs II

HSK 5

总算 and 终于 both mean "finally". 终于 simply says the long wait is over; 总算 adds a feeling of relief, or that the result is just about acceptable: 总算及格了 (at least I passed).

总算 vs 终于 (finally)

Form: subject + 终于 / 总算 + verb (+ 了)

- **她考了四次，总算通过了！** *Tā kǎole sì cì, zǒngsuàn tōngguò le!* – Four attempts, and she finally passed!
- **雨终于停了。** *Yǔ zhōngyú tíng le.* – The rain finally stopped.
- **他工作太累，终于病倒了。** *Tā gōngzuò tài lèi, zhōngyú bìngdǎo le.* – He overworked and finally fell ill.
- **等了一个小时，公交车总算来了。** *Děngle yí ge xiǎoshí, gōngjiāochē zǒngsuàn lái le.* – After an hour's wait, the bus finally came.
- **经过三年的努力，他终于实现了自己的梦想。** *Jīngguò sān nián de nǔlì, tā zhōngyú shíxiànle zìjǐ de mèngxiǎng.* – After three years of hard work, he finally achieved his dream.
- **这次考得总算还可以。** *Zhè cì kǎo de zǒngsuàn hái kěyǐ.* – This time the exam went more or less OK, at least.

How it works. Both words go after the subject and before the verb, and both come after a long wait or effort, often named first (考了四次, 等了一个小时, 经过三年的努力). The verb usually takes 了 because the result has now arrived.

终于 *zhōngyú* "at last, finally" is a neutral report: the end of a long process, and the result can be good or bad (终于病倒了). It also suits writing. 总算 *zǒngsuàn* adds the speaker's relief: a welcome result arrived, "thank goodness". It can also mean "at least, more or less" before an adjective: 总算还可以.

雨终于停了。	雨总算停了！	这次考得总算还可以。
a neutral report	relief: thank goodness	"at least OK, more or less"
good or bad results	welcome results only	a modest judgement

Watch out

- Unwelcome results take 终于, not 总算: *wrong:* 他总算病倒了 → 他终于病倒了.
- Both go after the subject: *wrong:* 终于雨停了 → 雨终于停了.
- Do not use them for something that came quickly: *wrong:* 我一按门铃，他终于开门了 → 我一按门铃，他就开门了.

In a passage

为了买到演唱会的票，小林在网上排了三个小时的队。票终于开始卖了，

可是一分钟就卖完了。他以为没希望了，没想到第二天有人退票，他总算买到了一张。拿到票的时候，他高兴得跳了起来。

Read and notice. Which moment is a neutral report and which one shows relief? Explain the choice of word.

总算: at long last



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. With relief: “Phew, I’m finally home!” …… 到家了！

2. “After a month of overwork he finally fell ill.” Which fits?

- A. 他终于累病了。
- B. 他总算累病了。
- C. 他总算病好了。
- D. 他终于不病了。

3. Build: “After two hours, the bus finally came.”

Put in order: 来了。 / 等了两个小时 / ， / 车终于

4. True or false? 雨总算停了 sounds relieved. If false, correct it.

5. After three failed attempts, your cousin has finally passed her driving test. Use 总算 or 终于. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Find and fix the problem. A classmate says 终于 can only describe a happy ending. Is 他终于承认失败了 wrong?

7. Use it yourself. Say that, with relief, you finally finished a difficult report.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 总算

总算 adds relief.

2. A. 他终于累病了。

An unwelcome outcome takes 终于.

3. 等了两个小时，车终于来了。

Wait, then 终于 + result.

4. True.

总算 expresses relief at a welcome result.

5. Model answer: 她考了四次，总算通过了！

Check your answer:

- 总算 is for welcome results; for an unwelcome one, use 终于: 他终于累病了, not 他总算累病了.
- Both go after the subject, before the verb.

■ Mixed practice

6. No. 终于 says something finally happened after a long time, good or bad. 总算 is the one that adds relief.

7. Model answer. 这份报告太难了，我总算写完了。

Review later. Tomorrow, use 终于 for a long wait and 总算 for a result you are relieved about.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Comparing similar prepositions: 跟 vs 对

HSK 5

跟 and 对 are both prepositions before a person, but they do different jobs. 跟 means "with" (doing something together, or talking with someone); 对 means "towards" (the person an attitude or action is aimed at): 跟他说 / 对他很好.

跟 vs 对 (with vs toward)

Form: 跟 + person + verb (with) · 对 + person / thing + attitude (towards)

- **我常跟她聊天，她对每个人都很热情。** *Wǒ cháng gēn tā liáotiān, tā duì měi ge rén dōu hěn rèqíng.* – I often chat with her; she's warm towards everyone.
- **我跟他商量一下。** *Wǒ gēn tā shāngliang yíxià.* – I'll discuss it with him.
- **运动对身体有好处。** *Yùndòng duì shēntǐ yǒu hǎochu.* – Exercise is good for your health.
- **我对中国历史很感兴趣。** *Wǒ duì Zhōngguó lìshǐ hěn gǎn xìngqù.* – I'm very interested in Chinese history.
- **这件事跟你没关系。** *Zhè jiàn shì gēn nǐ méi guānxi.* – This has nothing to do with you.
- **老师对我们的作业很满意。** *Lǎoshī duì wǒmen de zuòyè hěn mǎnyì.* – The teacher is very pleased with our homework.

How it works. Ask whether both sides take part, or whether something points one way. 跟 *gēn* marks the **partner** in a shared action: both people chat, discuss, eat together, or are compared (跟朋友吃饭, 跟他商量, 跟我一样). 对 *duì* marks the **target** of an attitude, feeling or effect, which goes in one direction only (对我很好, 对音乐感兴趣, 对身体有好处).

Both phrases come before the verb or adjective. Many fixed chunks take only one of them, so learn them as a pair with their word.

跟 (with: both sides)	对 (towards: one direction)
跟朋友吃饭 · 跟他说话 · 跟他商量	对我很好 · 对他很客气 · 对身体有害
跟 …… 一样 · 跟 …… 有关 · 跟 …… 结婚	对 …… 感兴趣 · 对 …… 满意 · 对 …… 负责

Watch out

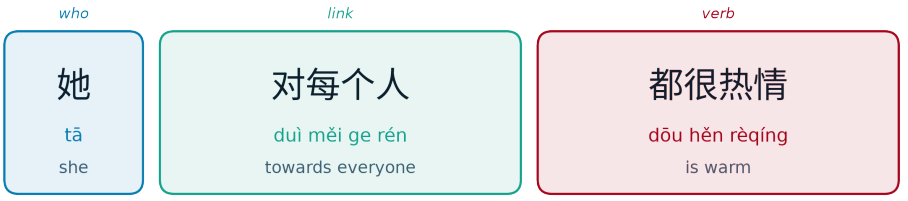
- *wrong:* 我对他结婚 → 我跟他结婚 (marriage takes two); *wrong:* 我跟音乐感兴趣 → 我对音乐感兴趣 (interest points one way).
- 对 …… 说 is "say to", one-way: 他对我说. 跟 …… 说 is more common in speech and suggests a conversation.
- 对 + person + 好 is "kind to"; 跟 + person + 好 means "on good terms with": 她对我很好 / 她跟我很好.

In a passage

我的同桌叫王丽。她对每个人都很友好，所以大家都喜欢跟她一起学习。她对数学特别感兴趣，常常跟老师讨论难题。我的数学不太好，她就跟我约好每天放学后一起做练习。

Read and notice. Sort the phrases into two lists, 跟 and 对. Why does each one take the word it does?

跟: with (together) · 对: towards (an attitude)



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Complete: “Exercise is good for your health.” 运动 …… 身体有好处。

2. “I want to discuss it with my parents.” Which fits? 我想 _____ 父母商量。

- A. 跟
- B. 为
- C. 给
- D. 对

3. Match each phrase to the right preposition.

- (1) _____ 音乐感兴趣
- (2) _____ 他结婚
- (3) _____ 工作很满意
- (4) _____ 我一样高
- A. 对
- B. 跟
- C. 跟
- D. 对

4. True or false? 跟朋友吃饭 means both people take part. If false, correct it.

5. Your sister talks about her best friend, who is always kind to everyone. Use 跟 or 对. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Find and fix the problem. A classmate writes 我对朋友一起学习 for "I study with friends." Correct it.

7. Use it yourself. Say you discussed a problem with your teacher and you are confident about the answer.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 对

An effect towards something takes 对.

2. A. 跟

Doing something together takes 跟.

3. (1) D: _____ 音乐感兴趣 = 对; (2) B: _____ 他结婚 = 跟; (3) A: _____ 工作很满意 = 对; (4) C: _____ 我一样高 = 跟

Attitudes take 对; togetherness and comparison take 跟.

4. True.

True. 跟 here means "with, together": 跟朋友吃饭 means both people eat. 对 instead marks the target of an action or attitude.

5. Model answer: 我常跟她聊天，她对每个人都很热情。

Check your answer:

- Talking together (two-way): 跟他说话. Attitude towards him (one-way): 对他很客气 – "She's very polite to him."
- 对 … 说 is possible ("say to"): 他对我说 …, but 跟 … 说 is more common in speech.

■ Mixed practice

6. Doing something together takes 跟: 我跟朋友一起学习. 对 is for the person an attitude or action is aimed at.

7. Model answer. 我跟老师讨论了这个问题，对答案很有信心。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one 跟 sentence and one 对 sentence about a classmate.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Comparing similar prepositions

HSK 5

Four sets of prepositions that look alike. 朝, 向 and 往 all mean "towards" but differ in what can follow them; 对 and 对于 introduce the target of an attitude; 关于 introduces a topic and 至于 moves to a new one; 给 and 为 both mean "for" in different ways.

At a glance

- **1.** 朝 vs 向 vs 往 – towards: 大家朝我看，往左站一点儿。
- **2.** 对 vs 对于 – to/toward vs regarding: 他对大家很客气。
- **3.** 关于 vs 对于 vs 至于: 关于出发时间，我们下周决定。
- **4.** 给 vs 为 – to/for vs for the sake of: 妈妈为了我们每天工作到很晚，我想给她买一份礼物。

1. 朝 vs 向 vs 往 (towards)

Form: 往 / 朝 / 向 + direction / person + verb · verb + 往 / 向 + destination

- **往前走，第二个路口往左拐。** *Wǎng qián zǒu.* – Go straight on and turn left at the second junction.
- **大家朝我看。** – Everyone look this way, at me.
- **我们应该向他学习。** – We should learn from him.
- **飞往上海的航班** – flights to Shanghai

How it works. All three mean "towards", but they differ in range.

	往	朝	向
movement in a direction	往北开	朝前走	向前走
facing a person / side	–	朝南的房间 · 朝我笑	向他挥手
abstract (learn from, apologise to)	–	–	向老师请教 · 向你道歉
after a verb	飞往 · 开往	–	走向成功

Watch out

- 往 doesn't take people: *wrong:* 往他道歉 → 向他道歉.
- Abstract verbs take 向: 学习, 请教, 道歉, 表示.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

朝: facing · 往: moving towards



2. 对 vs 对于 (to/toward vs regarding)

Form: 对 + person + treatment / attitude · 对于 + issue, comment

- **他对大家很客气。** *Tā duì dàjiā hěn kèqi.* – He's polite to everyone.
- **对于这个方案，我有不同的看法。** – As regards this proposal, I see it differently.
- **对 (于) 学生来说，时间很重要。** – For students, time matters a great deal.

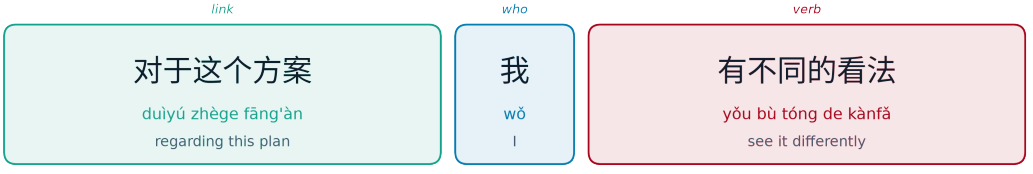
How it works. 对 covers both: how you treat a person (对我很好) and an issue you comment on. 对于 *duìyú* is formal and only for issues and topics, often at the start of the sentence. So 对于 can usually become 对, but not the other way round.

	对	对于
treatment of people	对我很好 · 对他说	–
issue / topic	对这个问题 ……	对于这个问题 ……
register	everyday	formal, essays

Watch out

- *wrong:* 他对于我很好 → 他对我很好.

对: to someone · 对于: regarding a matter



3. 关于 vs 对于 vs 至于

Form: 关于 + topic · 对于 + issue + view · (earlier point …), 至于 + new point

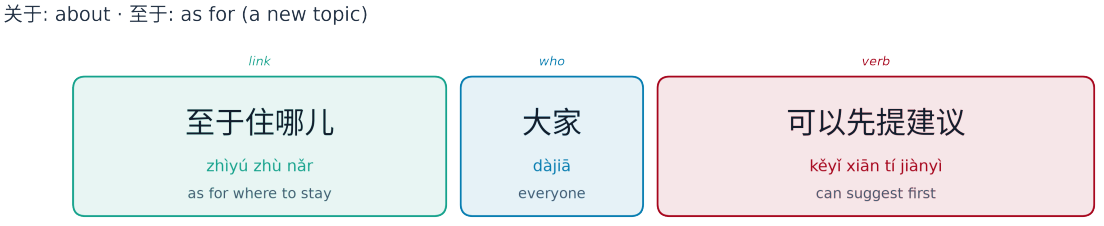
- **关于出发时间，我们下周决定。** *Guānyú chūfā shíjiān …* – On the departure time, we'll decide next week.
- **对于这个决定，我很满意。** – I'm very happy with this decision.
- **我负责订票，至于酒店，你来选吧。** – I'll book the tickets; as for the hotel, you choose.

How it works. All three bring in a topic, for different jobs.

Word	Job	Typical use
关于	about: content or subject	关于环境的文章, titles
对于	regarding: an attitude or judgement	对于这个问题，我认为……
至于	as for: switch to a related, separate point	after another point has been made

Watch out

- 至于 can't open a conversation: something must come before it.
- 关于 stays before the subject: *wrong:* 我关于这件事 …… → 关于这件事，我 …….



4. 给 vs 为 (to/for vs for the sake of)

Form: 给 + recipient + verb · 为 (了) + person / cause + verb

- **我想给妈妈买一份礼物。** *Wǒ xiǎng gěi māma mǎi yí fèn lǐwù.* – I want to buy Mum a present.
- **妈妈为了我们每天工作到很晚。** – Mum works late every day for us.
- **我为你高兴。** – I'm happy for you.

How it works. 给 marks someone who **receives** a thing or service (给他写信, 给我打电话). 为 marks the person or cause that an effort or feeling is **for** or **about** (为大家服务, 为孩子担心).

给	为
receiver: 给你介绍	on behalf of, for the sake of: 为人民服务
everyday	more formal, dedicated

Both work for some favours (给 / 为大家做饭).

Watch out

- Feelings take 为: *wrong:* 我给你高兴 → 我为你高兴; *wrong:* 给孩子担心 → 为孩子担心.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 朝 vs 向 vs 往 (towards)

1. Complete: “We should learn from her.” 我们应该 …… 她学习。

2. Which is wrong?

- A. 向他道歉
- B. 往他道歉
- C. 往前走
- D. 朝南的窗户

3. Build: “This plane flies to Shanghai.”

Put in order: 飞往 / 这架飞机 / 上海。

4. True or false? 朝南的房间 means a south-facing room. If false, correct it.

5. Your photographer friend arranges a group photo by the sea. Use 朝 or 向 or 往. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 对 vs 对于 (to/toward vs regarding)

6. Complete: “She is very kind to me.” 她 …… 我很好。

7. Which is wrong?

- A. 对这个问题，我没有意见。

- B. 他对我很客气。
- C. 对于这个问题，我没有意见。
- D. 他对于我很客气。

8. Build: “Regarding this issue, opinions differ.”

Put in order: 大家意见 / ， / 不一。/ 对于这个问题

9. True or false? 对于 … 来说 is more formal than 对 … 来说. If false, correct it.

10. In a meeting, you describe a new colleague and give your view on a proposal. Use 对 or 对于. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 关于 vs 对于 vs 至于

11. Complete: “I’ll book the tickets; as for the hotel, you choose.” 我负责订票，…… 酒店，你来选吧。

12. A book title: “A Book about Chinese Food”. Which word fits? 《_____ 中国菜的书》

- A. 至于
- B. 关于
- C. 对于
- D. 对

13. Match each word to its job.

- (1) 关于
- (2) 对于
- (3) 至于
- A. regarding (attitude or judgement)
- B. as for (switching to another point)
- C. about (topic or content)

14. True or false? 至于 usually turns from one topic to a related new one. If false, correct it.

15. You are writing an email planning a school trip. Use 关于 or 对于 or 至于. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 4. 给 vs 为 (to/for vs for the sake of)

16. Complete: “We’re all happy for you.” 我们都 …… 你高兴。

17. “Call me tomorrow.” Which fits? 明天 _____ 我打电话。

- A. 给
- B. 为
- C. 向
- D. 对

18. Build: “I bought Mum a bunch of flowers.”

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Put in order: 我 / 买了 / 给妈妈 / 一束花。

19. True or false? 为人民服务 sounds more formal than 给人民服务. If false, correct it.

20. Your mother works late every night to support the family. Use 给 or 为. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

21. Choose 往 or 朝: 这趟火车开 …… 上海。/ 他 …… 我笑了笑。

22. Choose 关于 or 至于: 这是一本 …… 环境的书。/ 我们先说时间，…… 地点，下次再定。

23. Choose 给 or 为: 我 …… 你打电话。/ 大家都 …… 他的成功感到高兴。

24. Find and fix the problem. A classmate writes 往老师请教 for "ask the teacher for advice." Correct it.

25. Use it yourself. Say what the discussion is about, then move to another issue with 至于.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 朝 vs 向 vs 往 (towards)

1. 向

Abstract "learn from" takes 向.

2. B. 往他道歉

往 shows direction of movement toward a place (往前走) and does not take a person. Apologising to someone uses 向 or 跟: 向他道歉.

3. 这架飞机飞往上海。

Verb + 往 + destination.

4. True.

True. 朝 means "facing towards": 朝南的房间 is a south-facing room.

5. Model answer: 大家朝我看，往左站一点儿。

Check your answer:

- 往 shows a direction, not a person you act towards: 向他道歉, not 往他道歉.
- Abstract verbs (学习, 请教, 道歉, 表示) take 向, not 朝 or 往.

■ 2. 对 vs 对于 (to/toward vs regarding)

6. 对

Treatment of people takes 对.

7. D. 他对于我很客气。

Treatment of people needs 对, not 对于.

8. 对于这个问题，大家意见不一。

对于 + issue, then the comment.

9. True.

True. 对于 … 来说 is more formal and suits essays; 对 … 来说 is the everyday form. Both mean "for, as far as … is concerned".

10. Model answer: 他对大家很客气。对于这个方案，我有不同的看法。

Check your answer:

- Wherever 对于 works, 对 usually works too: 对 (于) 这个问题 ….
- But treatment of people needs 对: 对我很好, 对他说, not 对于我很好 / 对于他说.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 3. 关于 vs 对于 vs 至于

11. 至于

至于 switches to a new, related point.

12. B. 关于

Content and titles take 关于.

13. (1) C: 关于 = about (topic or content); (2) A: 对于 = regarding (attitude or judgement); (3) B: 至于 = as for (switching to another point)

Each introduces a topic differently.

14. True.

It switches from a topic already mentioned or clear from the situation.

15. Model answer: 关于出发时间，我们下周决定。至于住哪儿，大家可以先提建议。

Check your answer:

- 至于 turns to a new topic after another one, so it usually comes after something else has been said.
- 关于 cannot follow the subject: 关于这件事，我 …, not 我关于这件事 ….

■ 4. 给 vs 为 (to/for vs for the sake of)

16. 为

Feelings take 为.

17. A. 给

The recipient of a call takes 给.

18. 我给妈妈买了一束花。

给 + person + verb + object.

19. True.

为 is the formal, dedicated "for".

20. Model answer: 妈妈为了我们每天工作到很晚，我想给她买一份礼物。

Check your answer:

- 给 + person = they receive something: 给他写信. 为 + person = on their behalf or about them: 为他担心.
- Feelings take 为, not 给: 我为你高兴, not 我给你高兴.

■ Mixed practice

21. 开往上海 (a destination, after the verb)。他朝我笑了笑 (facing a person).

22. 关于环境 (topic)。至于地点 (moving to the next topic).

23. 我给你打电话 (to someone)。为他的成功感到高兴 (because of, for the sake of).

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

24. 向 is used for a person you ask, learn from or report to: 向老师请教. 往 shows a direction of movement.

25. Model answer. 今天我们讨论关于考试的问题。至于假期安排，下次再说。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one sentence each with 朝, 向 and 往.

Comparing similar time words

HSK 5

Two pairs of time words. 平时 and 平常 both mean "usually, normally", but 平常 can also be an adjective ("ordinary"). 以后 and 之后 both mean "after"; 之后 is more formal and can start a sentence on its own (之后，他 ……).

At a glance

- **1.** 平时 vs 平常 – usually / ordinary: 爷爷平时九点就睡了，今天却一直等到十二点。
- **2.** 以后 vs 之后 – after / afterwards: 会议结束之后，经理宣布了新的计划。

1. 平时 vs 平常 (usually / ordinary)

Form: 平时 / 平常 + routine (usually) · 很平常 / 平常的 + noun (ordinary)

- **爷爷平时九点就睡了，今天却一直等到十二点。** *Píngshí* – Grandpa usually goes to bed at nine, but today he stayed up until midnight.
- **我平常七点起床。** – I usually get up at seven.
- **这是很平常的事。** – That's a very ordinary thing.

How it works. Both can mean "usually, normally", and 平时 sets ordinary days clearly against a special occasion (平时很忙，周末才有空). Only 平常 is also an adjective, "ordinary".

	平时	平常	通常
usually	✓	✓	as a rule (more formal)
ordinary (adj.)	–	很平常	–
example	跟平时一样	平常的生活	银行通常九点开门

Watch out

- *wrong:* 很平时 → 很平常.

平时: usually · 却: but this time



2. 以后 vs 之后 (after / afterwards)

Form: event / time span + 以后 / 之后 · 之后，… (afterwards) · 以后，… (from now on)

- **会议结束之后，经理宣布了新的计划。** *Huìyì jiéshù zhīhòu …* – After the meeting, the manager announced the new plan.
- **我们先去了博物馆。之后，我们去吃饭。** – We went to the museum first. Afterwards, we went to eat.
- **以后别迟到了。** – Don't be late from now on.
- **三天以后 / 三天之后** – three days later

How it works. After an event or time span, 以后 and 之后 both mean "after"; 之后 sounds slightly more written. Standing alone at the start, they differ:

Alone at the start	Meaning
之后 / 后来	afterwards (in a past story)
以后	in the future, from now on

Watch out

- In a past story, don't use bare 以后 for "afterwards": use 之后 or 后来.
- 不久之后 "not long after" is a fixed phrase.

…之后: after (formal 以后)



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 平时 vs 平常 (usually / ordinary)

1. Complete: "This is a very ordinary thing." 这是很 …… 的事。

2. Which is wrong?

- A. 跟平时一样。
- B. 这是很平时的事。
- C. 他平时很忙。
- D. 他平常很忙。

3. Build: "He's usually busy; only at weekends is he free."

Put in order: 才有空。 / 他平时很忙 / ， / 周末

4. True or false? 通常 is a little more formal than 平时. If false, correct it.

5. Your grandfather normally goes to bed at nine, but tonight is New Year's Eve. Use 平时 or 平常. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 以后 vs 之后 (after / afterwards)

6. Past story: "We went to the museum. Afterwards, we ate." 我们去了博物馆。……，我们去吃饭。

7. "From now on, please don't be late." Which fits? _____ 请别迟到了。

- A. 后来
- B. 然后
- C. 之后
- D. 以后

8. Build: "Not long after, he returned home."

Put in order: ， 他 / 就 / 不久之后 / 回国了。

9. True or false? 下课以后 and 下课之后 mean the same. If false, correct it.

10. You are writing up what happened after a company meeting. Use 以后 or 之后. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

11. Find and fix the problem. A classmate reads 毕业以后 as "before graduating". Correct it, and say how 之后 differs.

12. Use it yourself. Say what you usually do at weekends, and what you will do after the meeting.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 平时 vs 平常 (usually / ordinary)

1. 平常

Only 平常 is an adjective meaning "ordinary".

2. B. 这是很平时的事。

平时 is a time noun ("usually, ordinary times"), not an adjective, so 很平时的事 is wrong. The adjective "ordinary" is 平常: 很平常的事.

3. 他平时很忙，周末才有空。

平时 contrasts with the weekend.

4. True.

True. 通常 ("as a rule, normally") is slightly more formal than 平时 and often states general patterns.

5. Model answer: 爷爷平时九点就睡了，今天却一直等到十二点。

Check your answer:

- "Ordinary" takes 平常: 很平常, 平常的生活 ("An ordinary life"). Not 很平时.
- Both can mean "usually"; 平时 contrasts more clearly with a special occasion.

■ 2. 以后 vs 之后 (after / afterwards)

6. 之后

Afterwards in a past story: 之后.

7. D. 以后

以后 alone means "from now on, in future": 以后请别迟到了. 之后 needs a reference event (下课之后), 后来 is only for the past, and 然后 means "and then".

8. 不久之后，他就回国了。

不久之后 + clause.

9. True.

After a clause, both mean "after".

10. Model answer: 会议结束之后，经理宣布了新的计划。

Check your answer:

- "Afterwards" in a past story: 之后 (or 后来), not a bare 以后.
- "From now on": 以后, not 之后: 以后别迟到了 – "Don't be late again."

■ Mixed practice

11. 毕业以后 is "after graduating". 毕业之后 means the same but sounds more formal.

12. Model answer. 我平时周末在家看书。开完会以后，我去图书馆。

Review later. Tomorrow, use 平时 and 平常 in one sentence each.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Comparing similar verbs

HSK 5

看起来, 看来 and 显得 all say how something seems. 看起来 is about what you can see; 看来 is your conclusion from what you know; 显得 says how someone comes across in a situation (显得很紧张).

At a glance

- **1.** 看起来 vs 看来 – looks vs it seems: 他看起来很累，看来昨晚又加班了。
- **2.** 显得 vs 看起来 – comes across as vs looks: 短头发让她显得更年轻了。

1. 看起来 vs 看来 (looks vs it seems)

Form: subject + 看起来 + description · 看来，+ conclusion · 在 + person + 看来

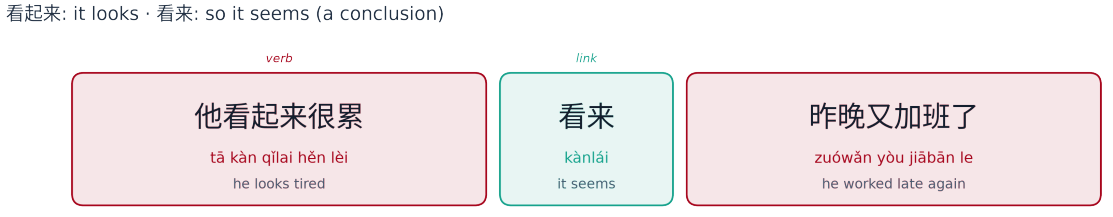
- **他看起来很累，看来昨晚又加班了。** *Tā kàn qǐlai hěn lèi, kànlái zuówǎn yòu jiābān le.* – He looks tired; it seems he worked late again.
- **这个菜看起来很好吃。** – This dish looks delicious.
- **地上湿了，看来下过雨。** – The ground is wet; it must have rained.
- **在我看来，这个计划不太现实。** – In my view, this plan isn't very realistic.

How it works. 看起来 reports how something **looks**: a direct impression, after the subject. 看来 states a **conclusion** from evidence, usually at the start of a clause. 在 …… 看来 gives someone's opinion.

看起来	看来	在 …… 看来
looks, appears	it seems / so (inference)	in someone's view
她看起来很年轻	看来他忘了	在我看来

Watch out

- For appearance, use 看起来: *wrong:* 她看来很年轻 → 她看起来很年轻.



exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

2. 显得 vs 看起来 (comes across as vs looks)

Form: (cause / 让 + person) + 显得 + description · subject + 看起来 + description

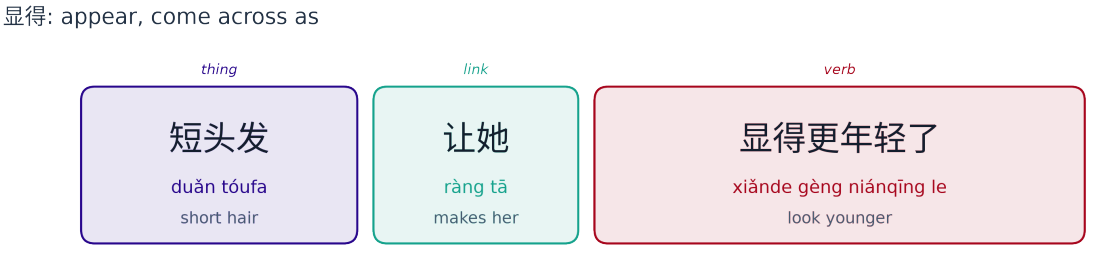
- **短头发让她显得更年轻了。** *Duǎn tóufa ràng tā xiǎnde gèng niánqīng le.* – Short hair makes her look younger.
- **白色让房间显得更大。** – White makes the room seem bigger.
- **在一群大人中间，他显得特别小。** – Among the adults, he seemed especially small.
- **她看起来很高兴。** – She looks happy.

How it works. 显得 *xiǎnde* "comes across as" describes an **effect** produced by something: a colour, a setting, a contrast. It often follows 让 / 使 or a context such as 在 …… 中间. 看起来 just reports your direct impression.

显得	看起来
effect of a cause or contrast	direct impression
白色让房间显得更大	房间看起来很大

Watch out

- 显得 takes a description, not an object: *wrong:* 显得她年轻 → 她显得年轻.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 看起来 vs 看来 (looks vs it seems)

1. The ground is wet: "It seems it rained." 地上湿了，…… 下过雨。

2. "This dish looks delicious." Which fits?

- A. 在这个菜看来很好吃。
- B. 看来这个菜很好吃。
- C. 这个菜看起来很好吃。
- D. 这个菜很好吃看来。

3. Build: "In my view, this plan isn't realistic."

Put in order: 这个计划 / ， / 不太现实。/ 在我看来

4. True or false? 看起来 usually gives an impression from what you see. If false, correct it.

5. Your colleague looks pale, and he hasn't touched his lunch. Use 看起来 or 看来. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 显得 vs 看起来 (comes across as vs looks)

6. Complete: "The white walls make the room look bigger." 白色的墙让房间 …… 更大。

7. Which stresses contrast? "Among the adults, he seems especially small."

- A. 在大人中间，他显得特别小。
- B. 看来他很小。
- C. 他吃起来很小。
- D. 他看起来很小。

8. Build: "Short hair makes her look younger."

Put in order: 短头发 / 更年轻了。/ 让她 / 显得

9. True or false? 看起来 simply reports a direct impression. If false, correct it.

10. Your friend got a short haircut and now everyone says she looks different. Use 显得 or 看起来. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

11. Choose 看起来 or 看来: 这个蛋糕 …… 很好吃。/ 他还没来，…… 不会来了。

12. Find and fix the problem. A classmate says 看来 always means you can see it. Correct the rule.

13. Use it yourself. Describe how a cake looks, then draw a conclusion from a friend's late reply.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 看起来 vs 看来 (looks vs it seems)

1. 看来

A conclusion from evidence takes 看来.

2. C. 这个菜看起来很好吃。

看起来 describes how something looks: 这个菜看起来很好吃. 看来 is a judgement from evidence and starts the sentence (看来他不来了), so it does not describe appearance.

3. 在我看来，这个计划不太现实。

在 … 看来 + opinion.

4. True.

看来 draws a conclusion instead.

5. Model answer: 他看起来很累，看来昨晚又加班了。

Check your answer:

- 看起来 follows the subject and comes before a description: 他看起来很累 – "He looks tired."
- 看来 starts a clause before a conclusion: 看来他很累 ("It seems he's tired"). Not 他看来很年轻 for "he looks young".

■ 2. 显得 vs 看起来 (comes across as vs looks)

6. 显得

A cause producing an effect: 显得.

7. A. 在大人中间，他显得特别小。

显得 fits an effect produced by contrast.

8. 短头发让她显得更年轻了。

Cause + 让 + person + 显得 + description.

9. True.

显得 adds a cause or contrast.

10. Model answer: 短头发让她显得更年轻了。

Check your answer:

- Use 显得 when a cause or contrast produces the look: 在人群中显得很矮 – "looks short in the crowd".
- 显得 takes a description, not an object: 她显得很年轻, not 显得她年轻.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ Mixed practice

11. 这个蛋糕看起来很好吃 (by its look)。看来他不会来了 (my conclusion).

12. 看起来 is about what something looks like. 看来 is a conclusion from what you know: 他还没回信，看来很忙.

13. Model answer. 这个蛋糕看起来很好吃。他到现在还没回复，看来是太忙了。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one sentence with 显得 about how someone seems.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Say it aloud: discussions, explanations and presentations

HSK 5

Make a group discussion useful

A study group wants to share notes online. One person thinks photographs are enough; another wants typed summaries. You do not have to agree before disagreeing, but first show that you understood the proposal.

我明白你的意思。拍照比较快，不过照片太多时不容易查找。不如按主题整理，再附上必要的照片。

Wǒ míngbai nǐ de yìsi. Pāizhào bǐjiào kuài, búguò zhàopiàn tài duō shí bù róngyì cházhǎo. Bùrú àn zhǔtí zhěnglǐ, zài fù shàng bìyào de zhàopiàn.

I understand your point. Taking photographs is faster, but too many photographs are hard to search. How about organising by topic and adding the necessary photographs?

Extend or challenge a point

我同意你的看法，另外 …… adds a point after genuine agreement. 我理解这个理由，不过 …… acknowledges a reason without pretending to agree. 也就是说 …… paraphrases an idea; check the paraphrase with the speaker before treating it as their view.

A response beginning 不过 can be natural when the preceding turn supplies the contrast. The aim is relevant, respectful interaction, not compulsory agreement or a memorised connector sequence.

Explain a process with its purpose

为了方便查找，我们先按主题分类，接着写简短说明，最后检查有没有重复。

To make searching easier, we first sort by topic, then write short descriptions, and finally check for duplicates.

The steps have a useful order. Several verbs can occur naturally in one sentence when the relationship is clear; there is no one-verb-per-sentence rule. **把文件备份，以免丢失。** Back up the files to avoid losing them. 为了 can also introduce an avoidance goal: **为了避免丢失，要做好备份。** The difference is how the purpose is expressed, not whether a negative outcome may be mentioned.

Present only the points you need

An opening can say **今天我想谈谈整理笔记的方法。** Today I want to discuss ways of organising notes. Use 首先, 接下来 and 最后 when they help, but do not promise three points if you have only two. A close with 总之 should restate the conclusion

already supported, not introduce new evidence.

Handle a question

A listener asks whether typing everything takes too long. Answer the trade-off: **确实需要时间，所以我们只整理重点，原来的照片保留下来。** It does take time, so we will summarise only the main points and keep the original photographs.

Practise a short explanation and a follow-up about time, cost or access. Review whether you distinguished a proposal from an established result, answered the objection, and gave steps someone could actually follow.

Practice

1. Which opener acknowledges a reason without agreeing: 我同意你的看法，另外…… or 我理解这个理由，不过 ……?
2. Paraphrase with 也就是说: 我们只整理重点，照片都保留。
3. Order the steps with 首先, 接着, 最后: 检查有没有错误 / 收集大家的笔记 / 按主题分类.
4. Fill the gap with 为了 or 以免: _ _大家都能看到，我们把笔记放在网上。/ 请保存两份，_ _丢失。
5. Someone says: 打字太花时间了。Answer the trade-off in one or two sentences.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Find and fix the problem. A classmate says 为了 cannot be used to avoid a problem, so you must always use 以免. Correct the rule.

7. Use it yourself. Explain how to organise shared notes, then answer a classmate who worries it will take too long.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ Practice answers

1. **我理解这个理由，不过 ……** It recognises the reason without claiming agreement.
2. For example: **也就是说，我们只写最重要的内容，原来的照片不删除。** Then check with the speaker that this is what they meant.
3. **首先收集大家的笔记，接着按主题分类，最后检查有没有错误。**
4. **为了**大家都能看到 ……; …… **以免**丢失。为了 introduces the goal; 以免 introduces the outcome to avoid.
5. For example: **确实比较花时间，所以我们每个人只整理一个主题，这样就快多了。** Admit the cost, then reduce it.

■ Mixed practice

6. 为了 can introduce avoiding a problem: 为了不迟到，我们早点儿走. 以免 comes second and means "so as not to": 我们早点儿走，以免迟到.

7. Model answer. 我们先分好每个人的部分，再一起整理。你担心太花时间？其实每人只要半个小时。

Review later. Tomorrow, explain a plan for one minute and answer one question about it.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn